



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Galatians**

**Version 66**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 66

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 41

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 40

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 2.1.29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2022-08-18

**Version:** 0.29

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 33

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 36

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 18

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b> .....	<b>9</b>
Galatians .....	9
Introduction to Galatians\...\n## Part 1: General Introduction\...\n### ... ..	10
Galatians 1 .....	13
Galatians 2 .....	69
Galatians 3 .....	97
Galatians 4 .....	132
Galatians 5 .....	167
Galatians 6 .....	196
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b> .....	<b>221</b>
Abstract Nouns .....	222
Active or Passive .....	224
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information .....	227
Blessings .....	231
Collective Nouns .....	233
Connect — Contrast Relationship .....	236
Connect — Exception Clauses .....	238
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship .....	240
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions .....	243
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship .....	245
Connect — Sequential Time Relationship .....	247
Connecting Words and Phrases .....	249
Copy or Borrow Words .....	253
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding .....	255
Double Negatives .....	258
Ellipsis .....	261
Exclamations .....	264
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' .....	266
First, Second or Third Person .....	268
Forms of You .....	270
Forms of 'You' — Singular .....	271
Go and Come .....	273
How to Translate Names .....	275
Hypothetical Situations .....	280
Idiom .....	283
Irony .....	285
Litotes .....	288
Metaphor .....	290
Metonymy .....	297
Nominal Adjectives .....	299
Numbers .....	301
Parallelism .....	304
Personification .....	307
Possession .....	309
Rhetorical Question .....	313
Symbolic Action .....	316
Synecdoche .....	318
Textual Variants .....	320

Translating Son and Father .....	323
When Masculine Words Include Women .....	325
When to Keep Information Implicit .....	327
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>329</b>
Abraham, Abram .....	330
adoption, adopt, adopted .....	331
adversary, enemy .....	332
age, aged .....	333
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ... ..	334
amen, truly .....	335
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather .....	336
angel, archangel .....	338
Antioch .....	340
apostle, apostleship .....	341
appoint, appointed .....	342
Arabia, Arabian .....	343
baptize, baptized, baptism .....	344
Barnabas .....	346
barren, dry .....	347
bear, bearer, carry .....	348
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief .....	349
bless, blessed, blessing .....	352
blood .....	354
boast, boastful .....	356
body .....	357
born again, born of God, new birth .....	358
brother .....	359
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances .....	360
call, call out .....	361
cast out, driving out, throw out .....	363
children, child, offspring .....	364
Christ, Messiah .....	366
church, Church .....	368
Cilicia .....	370
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision .....	371
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments .....	373
column, pillar .....	374
condemn, condemned, condemnation .....	375
confidence, confident .....	376
covenant .....	377
create, created, creation, creator .....	379
cross .....	380
crucify, crucified .....	381
cry, cry out, outcry .....	382
curse, cursed, cursing .....	383
Damascus .....	385
day .....	386
deceive, lie, deception, illusions .....	387
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue .....	388
devour .....	389
die, dead, deadly, death .....	390
drunk, drunkard .....	392

enslave, slave, bondservant, bound .....	393
envy, covet .....	394
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	395
evil, wicked, unpleasant .....	397
face, facial .....	399
faith .....	401
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy .....	403
fear, afraid, frighten .....	405
fellowship .....	406
flesh .....	407
fool, foolish, folly .....	408
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty .....	409
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful .....	410
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out .....	412
Galatia, Galatians .....	413
Gentile .....	414
glory, glorious, glorify .....	415
God .....	417
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father .....	419
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry .....	421
good news, gospel .....	423
good, right, pleasant, better, best .....	426
grace, gracious .....	428
Greek, Grecian, Hellenist .....	429
Hagar .....	430
hand .....	431
harvest, reap .....	433
heart .....	434
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly .....	435
heir .....	437
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit .....	438
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred .....	440
hope, hoped .....	443
hour, moment, immediately, for a while .....	444
household .....	445
hypocrite, hypocrisy .....	446
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him .....	447
in labor, labor pains, birth pains, pains of childbirth .....	448
inherit, inheritance, heir .....	449
instruct, instruction, instructors .....	451
Isaac .....	452
Israel, Israelites .....	453
it is written .....	455
James (brother of Jesus) .....	456
jealous, jealousy .....	457
Jerusalem .....	458
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus .....	460
Jew, Jewish .....	462
John (the apostle) .....	463
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad .....	464
Judaism, Jewish religion .....	466
Judea, Judah .....	467

judge, judgment .....	468
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification .....	470
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven .....	472
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish .....	474
labor, laborer, work, hard work .....	476
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God .....	477
law, principle .....	480
life, live, living, alive .....	481
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if .....	483
lord, Lord, master, sir .....	484
love, beloved .....	486
lust, lustful, passions, desires .....	488
manager, steward, stewardship .....	489
mediator .....	490
mercy, merciful .....	491
miracle, wonder, sign .....	493
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock .....	495
month, monthly .....	496
nation .....	497
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring .....	499
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared .....	500
patient, patience, impatient .....	501
Paul, Saul .....	502
peace, peaceful, peacemakers .....	504
persecute .....	505
perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, ... ..	506
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas .....	507
plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow .....	508
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation .....	509
prison, prisoner, imprison .....	511
profit, profitable, unprofitable .....	512
promise, promised .....	513
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up, .....	514
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance .....	516
redeem, redeemer, redemption .....	518
reject, rejected, rejection .....	519
restore, restoration .....	520
return, turn back .....	521
reveal, revealed, revelation .....	522
right hand .....	523
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... ..	525
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows .....	528
save, saved, safe, salvation .....	529
seed, semen .....	532
seek, search, look for .....	533
self-control, self-controlled .....	534
send, sent, send out .....	535
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women .....	536
set apart .....	538
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication .....	539
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning .....	540
Sinai, Horeb .....	542

son	543
Son of God, the Son	545
sons of God, children of God	547
sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician	548
spirit, wind, breath	549
strength, strengthen, strong	551
strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict	553
stumbling block, stone of stumbling	554
submit, submission, in submission	555
suffer, suffering	556
Syria, Ashur	558
teach, teaching, untaught	559
tempt, temptation	560
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	561
time, untimely, date	563
Titus	564
to minister, ministry	565
tradition	566
transgress, transgression	567
trespass	568
trial, proving	569
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity	570
true, truth	571
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	573
turn, turn away, turn back, return	574
understand, understanding, thinking	576
vain, vanity	577
voice	578
walk, walked	579
will of God	580
womb	581
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...	582
work, works, deeds	584
world, worldly	586
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	587
year	588
yeast, leaven, unleavened	589
yoke, yoked, tied	590
zeal, zealous	591
<b>Contributors</b>	<b>592</b>
unfoldingWord@ Translation Notes Contributors	592
unfoldingWord@ Literal Text Contributors	598
unfoldingWord@ Simplified Text Contributors	599
unfoldingWord@ Translation Academy Contributors	600
unfoldingWord@ Translation Words Contributors	600
unfoldingWord@ Translation Words Links Contributors	601





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Galatians**



**Introduction to Galatians Part 1: General Introduction Outline of the Book of Galatians**

1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).

1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).

1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).

1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).

1. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).

**Who wrote the Book of Galatians?**

Paul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.

It is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.

**What is the Book of Galatians about?**

Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [faith](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))

**How should the title of this book be translated?**

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**

**What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?**

To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though

one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues**

**How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?**

These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

**What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"**

Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ." See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of "in Christ" and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

**What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?**

\* "Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes" (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, "[so] that ye should not obey the truth." Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators' region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Galatians 1

**Galatians 1 General Notes**

**Structure and formatting**

Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was “not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones.” Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.

**Special concepts in this chapter**

**Heresy**

God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: [save, saved, safe, salvation, eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever, good news, gospel](#) and [condemn, condemned, condemnation](#) and [curse, cursed, cursing](#))

**Paul’s qualifications**

Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#))

**Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

“You are turning so quickly to a different gospel”

The Book of Galatians is one of Paul’s earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))



## **Galatians 1:1**

## Paul (ULT)

Here, Paul is introducing himself as the author of this letter. Your language may have a particular way of introducing the author of a letter. Use that here. Alternate translation: “This letter is from me, Paul”

## Paul (ULT)

Paul is speaking of himself in the third person. If this is confusing in your language, you can use the first person. Alternate translation: “This letter is from me, Paul” or “I, Paul” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

## not from men nor by man (ULT)

If your readers would misunderstand this double negative, you could translate this phrase using only one negative word. Alternate translation: “not from men or through man” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

## not from men (ULT)

Here, the word **from** indicates source. The phrase **not from men** means that humans are not the source of Paul’s apostleship and that he was not commissioned or appointed an apostle by humans. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “not through the commissioning of humans” or “not through human commission” or “not sent out by people” or “not because I was appointed and sent by a group of people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## men...man (ULT)

Although the terms **men** and **man** are masculine, Paul uses them here in a generic sense to refer to humans in general. Alternate translation: “humans ... humans” or “people ... a person” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## by man, but through Jesus Christ and God {the} Father (ULT)

Both times that the word **through** is used in this verse it indicates agency/means and refers to the agency/means by which Paul’s was commissioned as an apostle. Choose the best word in your language to indicate the meaning of the word **through** here. Alternate translation: “through the agency of man, but through the agency of Jesus Christ and God the Father”

## but (ULT)

Here, the word **but** introduces a contrast between different potential agents or means of Paul’s commission. The word **but** is introducing a contrast between Paul’s apostleship being **not through man** but rather being **through Jesus Christ and God the Father**. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: “but rather” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> Paul, an apostle—not from men nor by man, but through Jesus Christ and God {the} Father, the one having raised him from {the} dead—

## UST

<sup>1</sup> I, Paul, am writing to my dear brothers and sisters in the province of Galatia. I am Paul, the apostle. No group of people made me an apostle, and God did not tell anybody to make me one. Instead, I am an apostle because Jesus the Messiah and God the Father have sent me as one—yes, God the Father, who made the Messiah live again after he had died!



## God {the} Father, the one having raised him from {the} dead (ULT)

The phrase **the one having raised him from the dead** gives further information about **God the Father**. It is not making a distinction between **God the Father** and **the one having raised him from the dead** as if they are two separate entities. If this is not understood in your language, you can make the relationship between these phrases more clear. Alternate translation: “God the Father who is the same one who made Jesus Christ live again after he died” or “God the Father who caused Jesus Christ to live again after he had died” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

## God {the} Father (ULT)

Here, the phrase **the Father** could be (1) a general title for God which identifies him as the first person in the Christian Trinity. If you choose this option then you should not define whose **Father** God is in your translation but rather you should use a more an expression like the ULT does. (See: [When to Keep Information Implicit](#)) (2) referring to God’s relationship to those who believe in Christ. Alternate translation: “God our Father”

## from {the} dead (ULT)

Paul is using the adjective **dead** as a noun in order to indicate a group of people. Your language may use adjectives in the same way. If not, you can translate this with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: “from among the people who have died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

## from {the} dead (ULT)

Here, the phrase **the dead** could be a figurative way of referring to a place, in which case it would be referring to “the place of the dead” or “the realm of the dead.” If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “from the place of the dead” or “from the realm of the dead” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- an apostle
- Jesus
- Christ
- God {the} Father
- having raised
- the} dead

## Translation Words - UST

- apostle, apostleship
- Christ, Messiah
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Paul, Saul
- die, dead, deadly, death
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

## Galatians 1:2

### brothers (ULT)

Here, although the term **brothers** is masculine, Paul is using it in a generic sense to refer to fellow Christians, which includes both men and women. Paul views all those who believe in Jesus, as members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father. If your readers would misunderstand the use of **brothers** in this context, you can indicate explicitly what it means. Alternate translation: “fellow believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### of Galatia (ULT)

Here, the word **Galatia** could refer to: (1) the Roman political province called **Galatia**. Alternate translation: “in the province of Galatia” or (2) the geographical region known as **Galatia**. Alternate translation: “in the region of Galatia” If it would help your readers you could state explicitly what the word **Galatia** refers to here. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### of Galatia (ULT)

Paul uses the possessive form here to describe churches that are in Roman political province called **Galatia** or in the geographical region known as **Galatia**. If this use of the possessive form is not clear in your language, you could clarify the meaning using a form that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “in the province of Galatia” or “in the region of Galatia” (See: [Possession](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [to the churches](#)
- [of Galatia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [church, Church](#)
- [Galatia, Galatians](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> and all the [brothers](#) with me, [to the churches of Galatia](#):

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> I and all the fellow believers who are here with me greet you all in the churches in the province of Galatia.



## **Galatians 1:3**

## Grace to you and peace (ULT) will kindly help you and give you peace (UST)

This is a common blessing that Paul often uses in the beginning of his letters. Use a form that people would recognize as a blessing in your language. Alternate translation: “May God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ give you grace and peace.” (See: [Blessings](#))

## Grace to you and peace from God {the} Father and our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **Grace** and **peace**, you could express the idea behind the abstract nouns **grace** and **peace** with adjectives such as “gracious” and “peaceful.” Alternate translation: “May God our Father and our Lord Jesus Christ be gracious to you and make you peaceful” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## to you (ULT) you (UST)

Here, the word **you** is plural and refers to the Galatians. Unless noted otherwise, all instances of “you” and “your” in this letter refer to the Galatians and are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

## God {the} Father (ULT) God, our Father (UST)

See how you chose to translate the phrase **God the Father** in [1:1](#).

## our (ULT)

Here, the word **our** refers to Paul, the believers in Galatia, and all believers in Jesus and so is inclusive. Your language may require you to mark this form. In this book, unless otherwise stated, the word “our” refers to Paul, the believers in Galatia, and all believers and is inclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Grace](#)
- [peace](#)
- [God {the} Father](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God, our Father](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [will kindly help](#)
- [give you peace](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [Grace](#) to you and [peace](#) from [God {the} Father](#) and our [Lord Jesus Christ](#),

### UST

<sup>3</sup> I pray that [God, our Father](#), and the [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#) will kindly help you and [give you peace](#).



## **Galatians 1:4**

**the one having given himself for our sins so that he might deliver us from the present evil age (ULT)**

**The Messiah sacrificed himself to God for our sins, in order to take us away from this world in which people act in such evil ways (UST)**

The phrase **the one having given himself for our sins so that he might deliver us from the present evil age** gives us further information about “our Lord Jesus Christ.” It is not making a distinction between them as if they were two different entities. If this might confuse your readers, you can make the relationship between these phrases clearer. Alternate translation: “who is the one having given himself for our sins so that he might deliver us from the present evil age” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

**for our sins (ULT)**

**for our sins (UST)**

Here, **sins** figuratively refers to the punishment for sin and the phrase **for our sins** refers to Christ giving his life “as a substitution for the punishment that our sins deserved.” If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “as a substitution for the punishment that our sins deserved” or “to take the punishment we deserved because of our sins” or “to take the punishment for our sins” or “as a substitution for the punishment that our sins deserved” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**our...our (ULT)**

**our...our (UST)**

See the note on **our** in [1:3](#).

**our sins (ULT)**

**our sins (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **sins**, you could express the same idea with an adjective such as “sinful,” as modeled by the UST, or you could express the meaning in some other way that is natural in your language. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**so that (ULT)**

**in order (UST)**

The phrase **so that** introduces a purpose clause. Paul is stating the purpose for which Christ gave himself for our sins. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: “in order that” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> the one having given himself for our **sins** so that **he might deliver** us from the present **evil age**, according to the **will** of our **God and Father**,

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> The Messiah sacrificed himself to God for our **sins**, in order **to take us away** from this **world in which people act in such evil ways**. He did this because God, our Father, **wanted him to**.



## from the present evil age (ULT) from this world in which people act in such evil ways (UST)

Here, the phrase **the present evil age**, refers not only to a time period but also refers to the sinful attitudes and actions that characterize **the present evil age**. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “from this present time that is dominated by sinfulness” or “from this present evil age with it’s evil attitudes and desires” or “from the evil powers at work in the world today” (See: [Metonymy](#))

## of our God and Father (ULT)

The phrase **and Father** gives further information about **our God**. It is not making a distinction between **God** and **Father** as if they are two separate entities. If this is not understood in your language, you can make the relationship between these words more clear. Alternate translation: “of our God who is our Father” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- he might deliver
- evil
- age
- will
- of...God...and Father

## Translation Words - UST

- sins
- to take...away
- world
- in which people act in such evil ways
- wanted him to
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

## Galatians 1:5

### be} the glory (ULT) praise God (UST)

The phrase **be the glory** is an expression of praise. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **glory**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “praise”, as modeled by the UST, or you could express the meaning in some other way that is natural in your language. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Amen (ULT)

**Amen** is a Hebrew word. Paul spelled it out using Greek letters so his readers would know how it sounded. He assumes that they know that it means “so be it” or “yes indeed.” In your translation, you can spell it the way it sounds in your language. If your readers would not know what **Amen** means, you could also explain its meaning. Alternate translation: “Amen, which means, ‘So be it!’” (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [Amen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [praise God](#)
- [amen, truly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> to him {be} the [glory](#) forever {and} ever. [Amen](#).

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Because that is true, let us now [praise God](#) forever and ever.



## **Galatians 1:6**

**I am amazed (ULT)****I am amazed (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I am surprised" or "I am shocked"

**you are turning away so quickly (ULT)**

Here, the phrase **turning away** means "to desert" and refers to turning ones heart or mind away from believing and following something. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "you are so quickly deserting" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you are turning away (ULT)****you have stopped trusting in him (UST)**

The phrase **you are turning away** is in the present tense and is portraying the action of **turning away** as in process, but not yet completed. Make sure that you express this phrase in your language in a way that shows that the Galatians **turning away** is currently happening but not complete. (Paul is writing this letter in order to encourage the Galatians to not turn away to **a different gospel**).

**so quickly (ULT)**

Here, the phrase **so quickly** means that the Galatians were turning away from faith in the true gospel shortly after they accepted it. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "from the true gospel so soon after accepting it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from the one having called you (ULT)**

Here, the phrase **the one** refers to "God." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: "and from God, who is the one who has called you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**having called (ULT)****called (UST)**

Here, the phrase **called** refers to being "chosen" by God. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "having chosen" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**by (ULT)****in (UST)**

Here, the word **in** could (1) refer to the Galatians being called "into" the sphere or realm of grace. Alternate translation: "into" or "to live in" (2) refer to the means by which the Galatians were saved. Alternate translation: "by" or "through"

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> I am amazed that you are turning away so quickly to a different **gospel** from the one **having called** you by {the} **grace of Christ**,

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> As you know, **the Messiah** called you in **his kindness** to trust in him. But now I am amazed that you have stopped trusting in him! Now you believe a different **message**, which some people say is the true good news about God.

**the} grace (ULT)**  
**his kindness (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea with an adverb such as “graciously”, as modeled by the UST, or you could express the meaning in some other way that is natural in your language. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- I am amazed
- a...gospel
- having called
- the} grace
- of Christ

**Translation Words - UST**

- the Messiah
- called
- his kindness
- I am amazed
- a...message



## **Galatians 1:7**



**another (ULT)**  
**another good news (UST)**

Paul is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “another gospel” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**except certain ones are the ones causing you trouble and want to pervert the gospel of Christ (ULT)**

If, in your language, the use of the word **except** makes it appear as if Paul is making a statement and then contradicting it, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Alternate translation: “instead certain people are causing you trouble and want to pervert the gospel of Christ” (See: [Connect — Exception Clauses](#))

**certain ones (ULT)**  
**other people (UST)**

Alternate translation: “certain people”

**causing you trouble (ULT)**  
**confusing...you (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **trouble**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “troubling,” or you could express the meaning in some other way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “troubling you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**to pervert (ULT)**  
**to change (UST)**

Alternate translation: “to twist the truth of” or “to change”

**the gospel of Christ (ULT)**  
**the good news about the Messiah (UST)**

By using the possessive form here, Paul is either using it to: (1) describe the gospel that is about Christ, in which case the possessive form is being used to describe the content of the gospel. Alternate translation: “the gospel about Christ” (2) designate Christ as the one who proclaimed the gospel message he is referring to in which case Paul is referring to the gospel message that Christ preached. Alternate translation: “the gospel that Christ proclaimed” or “the gospel that Christ preached” (See: [Possession](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [causing...trouble](#)
- [to pervert](#)
- [gospel](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> which is not another, except certain ones are the ones [causing](#) you [trouble](#) and want [to pervert](#) the [gospel of Christ](#).

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> The Messiah never told us another good news, but other people are [confusing](#) you. They want [to change](#) the [good news](#) about the [Messiah](#); they want you to believe that the Messiah actually said something different.

- of Christ

## Translation Words - UST

- confusing
- to change
- good news
- Messiah



## **Galatians 1:8**

**even if we or an angel from heaven might proclaim to you a gospel other than the one we proclaimed to you, let him be cursed (ULT) even if we apostles or an angel from heaven should tell you a good news that is not the same as what we told you before, God should punish that person forever (UST)**

The word **if** introduces a hypothetical situation. Paul is using a hypothetical situation to warn the Galatians against any teaching that is contrary to the original gospel message that they were taught. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a hypothetical situation. Alternate translation: “if it were to happen that we or an angel from heaven might proclaim to you a gospel other than the one we proclaimed to you, let whoever would do that be cursed” or “suppose it were to happen that we or an angel from heaven might proclaim to you a gospel other than the one we proclaimed to you, let whoever would do that be cursed” (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#) )

**we (ULT)**  
**we apostles (UST)**

When Paul says **we**, he is not including the Galatians, so **we** would be exclusive. Your language may require you to mark these forms. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

**we (ULT)**  
**we apostles (UST)**

Alternate translation: “I or my co-laborers in the gospel”

**might proclaim to you a gospel (ULT)**  
**should tell you a good news (UST)**

Alternate translation: “proclaim to you a gospel message” or “a message of good news”

**other than the one we proclaimed (ULT)**  
**not the same as what we told (UST)**

Here, the phrase **the one** refers to the gospel message that Paul and his co-laborers had proclaimed to the Galatians. If your readers might misunderstand this you can state this explicitly. Alternate translation: “different from the gospel we proclaimed” or “different from the message we proclaimed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**let him be cursed (ULT)**  
**God should punish that person forever (UST)**

If your language has a common way of asking God to curse someone, or of calling down a curse on someone, and it would be appropriate to use in this context, consider using it here.

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But even if we or [an angel](#) from [heaven might proclaim](#) to you [a gospel](#) other than the one we proclaimed to you, let him be [cursed](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But even if we apostles or [an angel](#) from [heaven should tell](#) you [a good news](#) that is not the same as what we told you before, [God should punish that person forever](#).

**let him be cursed (ULT)**  
**God should punish that person forever (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of someone being **cursed**, you could express the same idea with a verbal form such as “curse.” Alternate translation: “let God curse him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**let him be cursed (ULT)**  
**God should punish that person forever (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. If you must state who did the action, Paul implies that “God” is the one who will do it. Alternate translation: “let God curse him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**let him be cursed (ULT)**  
**God should punish that person forever (UST)**

Although the term **him** is masculine, Paul is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: “let God curse that person” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- an angel
- heaven
- might proclaim...a gospel
- cursed

**Translation Words - UST**

- an angel
- heaven
- should tell...a good news
- God should punish that person forever



## **Galatians 1:9**



## **we have said before (ULT)** **we have already told you (UST)**

When Paul says **we**, he is not including the Galatians, so **we** would be exclusive. Your language may require you to mark these forms. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## **If someone proclaims to you a gospel (ULT)**

The word **If** introduces a hypothetical situation. Paul is using a hypothetical situation to warn the Galatians against any teaching that is contrary to the original gospel message that they were taught. Use a natural form in your language for introducing a hypothetical situation. Alternate translation: "If it were to happen that someone proclaims to you a gospel" or "Suppose it were to happen that someone proclaims to you a gospel" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#) )

## **other than the one (ULT)** **it is not the same as what you believed (UST)**

See how you translated the phrase **other than the one** in 1:8. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## **let him be cursed (ULT)** **I ask God that he condemn that person forever (UST)**

See how you translated the phrase **let him be cursed** in 1:8. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## **let him be cursed (ULT)** **I ask God that he condemn that person forever (UST)**

Although the term **him** is masculine, Paul is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. See how you translated the phrase **let him be cursed** in 1:8. Alternate translation: "let God curse that person" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## **Translation Words - ULT**

- [As](#)
- [proclaims...a gospel](#)
- [you received](#)
- [cursed](#)

## **Translation Words - UST**

- [As](#)
- [is telling...a form of the good news](#)
- [it is not the same as what you believed](#)
- [I ask God that he condemn that person forever](#)

## **ULT**

<sup>9</sup> [As](#) we have said before, and now I say again, "If someone [proclaims](#) to you a [gospel](#) other than the one [you received](#), let him be [cursed](#)."

## **UST**

<sup>9</sup> [As](#) we have already told you, so now I say to you again that someone [is telling](#) you [a form of the good news](#) that he says is good, but [it is not the same as what you believed](#). So [I ask God that he condemn that person forever](#).



## **Galatians 1:10**

## For (ULT)

Here, the word **For** is being used to introduce Paul's argument against an implied assertion that he altered the content of his gospel message in order to make it more acceptable to people. If it would help your readers, you could express the implied assertion explicitly as modeled by the UST. (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

## For do I now persuade men, or God? Or do I seek to please men (ULT)

By using these two rhetorical questions Paul is not asking the Galatians for information, but is using the question form for emphasis and to engage his readers thinking. If you would not use a rhetorical question for this purpose in your language, you could translate his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "For I do not seek to persuade men, but instead I only seek the approval of God! I am not seeking to please men!" or "For I do not seek the approval of men, but instead I only seek the approval of God! I am not seeking to please men!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## now...do I...persuade men, or God? Or do I seek to please men? If I were still pleasing men (ULT)

Although the term **men** is masculine, Paul is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women, and refers to "people" in general. Alternate translation: "do I now persuade people, or God? Or do I seek to please people? If I were still pleasing people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

## If I were still pleasing men, I would not be a servant of Christ (ULT) If I were still trying to please people, then I would not really be serving the Messiah (UST)

The word **if** introduces a hypothetical condition. Paul is using a hypothetical situation to teach the Galatians. Use the natural form in your language for introducing a hypothetical situation or if it would help your readers you can state Paul's meaning in plain language. Alternate translation: "I am not still trying to please men because I am a servant of Christ" or "If I were still pleasing people, then I would not be serving Christ" (See: [Connect — Hypothetical Conditions](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [do I seek](#)
- [a servant](#)
- [of Christ](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [I am not trying](#)
- [would...be serving](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

## ULT

<sup>10</sup> For do I now persuade men, or [God](#)? Or [do I seek](#) to please men? If I were still pleasing men, I would not be [a servant of Christ](#).

## UST

<sup>10</sup> I do not need people to like me, because it is [God](#) who approves of me. [I am not trying](#) to please people. If I were still trying to please people, then I would not really [be serving the Messiah](#).

## Galatians 1:11

### For (ULT)

Here, the word **For** is used to introduce a supporting statement that further supports and gives reason for Paul's prior statement. Use a form that would be natural in your language for introducing a statement that supports a prior statement. (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

### brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers (UST)

Although the term **brothers** is masculine, Paul is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women and refers to those who believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: "fellow believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### having been proclaimed by me (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "that I proclaimed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Although the term **man** is masculine, Paul is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women, and refers to "humans." Alternate translation: "did not come from a human" or "is not a human message" or "is not a message that people made up" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I make known...that](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [gospel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [My fellow believers](#)
- [I want...to know](#)
- [message about the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> For [I make known](#) to you, [brothers](#), [{that}](#) the [gospel](#) having been proclaimed by me is not according to man.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [My fellow believers](#), I want you to [know](#) that the [message about the Messiah](#) that I proclaim to people is not one that some person created.



## **Galatians 1:12**

**For (ULT)**

Here, the word **For** could be being used to introduce: (1) the grounds or basis for Paul's assertion in [1:11](#), in which case what follows the word **For** is support for what Paul said in [1:11](#). Use a form that would be natural for introducing a statement which gives supporting evidence. Alternate translation: "In support of my claim that the gospel I proclaimed is not according to man, I want you to know that" (2) a statement which explains and builds on Paul's assertion in [1:11](#). Use a form that would be natural for introducing a statement which further clarifies and explains a prior statement. Alternate translation: "To explain further, I want you to know" or "That is" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> For I did not [receive](#) it from man, nor [was I taught it](#), but by [revelation of Jesus Christ](#).

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> I did not [learn](#) this good news from any ordinary human being, and no such person [taught it](#) to me. Instead, it was [Jesus the Messiah himself who taught me](#).

**not...I did...receive it from man, nor was I taught it (ULT)****not...I did...learn this good news from any ordinary human being, and no such person taught it (UST)**

The phrase **I did not receive it from man** and the phrase **nor was I taught it** mean basically the same thing. If saying the same thing twice might be confusing for your readers, you can combine the phrases into one. Alternate translation: "I did not receive the gospel that I proclaim from any person" or "no human being taught me the gospel that I proclaim" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**man (ULT)****any ordinary human being (UST)**

Although the term **man** is masculine, Paul is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women, and refers to "humans." See how you translated the word **man** in [1:11](#) where it is used with a similar meaning. Alternate translation: "people" or "humans" or "a human source" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**was I taught it (ULT)****taught it (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form, as modeled by the UST, or in another way that is natural in your language. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it...was I taught it (ULT)****this good news...taught it (UST)**

Here, both occurrences of the word **it** refer back to "the gospel" which Paul "proclaimed" which he mentioned in [1:11](#). If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "the gospel that I proclaimed ... was I taught the gospel that I proclaimed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))



## **was I taught it (ULT)** **taught it (UST)**

Paul is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “was I taught it by any person” or “was I taught it by man” or “was I taught it by a human being” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

## **but (ULT)** **Instead (UST)**

What follows the word **but** is in contrast to the phrases **receive it from man** and **taught it**. In contrast to Paul receiving the message he proclaimed from a human source or being **taught it** Paul received it from a divine source. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: “rather” or “instead” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

## **by (ULT)** **who taught me (UST)**

Alternate translation: “through a”

## **by revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)** **Jesus the Messiah himself who taught me (UST)**

Paul could be using the possessive form here to mean: (1) that God revealed Jesus Christ to Paul. This would mean that God is the one who did the revealing and Jesus Christ is the one who God revealed. See the phrase “to reveal his Son in me” in [1:16](#). Alternate translation: “God revealed Jesus Christ to me” or “God made me know the gospel when he showed Jesus Christ to me” (2) that it was Jesus Christ who made the revelation to Paul. Alternate translation: “by what Jesus Christ revealed to me” (3) both option 1 and 2 together. Alternate translation: “Jesus Christ revealed himself to me and taught me the gospel about himself” or “Jesus Christ revealed himself to me and taught me the gospel concerning himself”(See: [Possession](#))

## **but by revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)** **Instead, it was Jesus the Messiah himself who taught me (UST)**

Paul is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the context. Alternate translation: “but I received it by a revelation of Jesus Christ” or “but I was taught it by a revelation of Jesus Christ” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [did...receive](#)
- [was I taught it](#)
- [revelation](#)
- [of Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [did...learn](#)
- [taught it](#)

- Jesus
- the Messiah
- who taught me

## Galatians 1:13

### my former life (ULT) what I did in the past (UST)

If your language does not use abstract nouns for the ideas of **manner** and **life**, you could express the same idea with a verbal phrase such as “how I formerly lived”, or you could express the meaning in some other way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “how I formerly lived” or “how I formerly conducted myself” or “how I formerly behaved” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### in Judaism (ULT) when I worshiped God in the Jewish way (UST)

Here, the phrase **in Judaism** refers to following the Jewish religious guidelines. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “following the Jewish religion” or “following the Jewish religious guidelines” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### beyond measure (ULT) I never stopped (UST)

The phrase **beyond measure** is an idiom meaning “excessively.” If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: “excessively” or “to an extreme degree” or “intensely” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judaism](#)
- [I was persecuting](#)
- [church](#)
- [of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I worshiped God in the Jewish way](#)
- [doing the worst things](#)
- [groups of believers](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For you have heard about my former life in [Judaism](#), that [I was persecuting](#) the [church of God](#) beyond measure, and I was destroying it.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> People have told you about what I did in the past when [I worshiped God in the Jewish way](#). I never stopped [doing the worst things](#) to the [groups of believers](#) that [God](#) had established. I tried to destroy those believers and their groups.

## Galatians 1:14

### in Judaism (ULT) in the Jewish way (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **in Judaism** in 1:13 where it is used with a similar meaning. Alternate translation: “in the Jewish religion” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Judaism...race (ULT) the...Jew (UST)

Alternate translation: “nation”

### my race (ULT) Jew my (UST)

The word **race** is a singular noun that refers to a group of people. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: “my ethnic group the Jews” or “my people the Jews” or “the Jewish people” (See: [Collective Nouns](#))

### of my fathers (ULT) our ancestors had kept (UST)

Here, the word **fathers** figuratively means “ancestors.” If your readers would not understand what **fathers** means in this context, you could use an equivalent metaphor from your culture. Alternatively, you could express the meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “of my ancestors” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judaism
- zealous
- for {the} traditions

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish way
- I was...angry
- the traditions

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> And I was advancing in **Judaism** beyond many of the same age among my race, being extremely **zealous for {the} traditions** of my fathers.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> I honored God in the **Jewish way** more thoroughly than any other Jew my own age. **I was very angry** when I saw other Jews neglecting to obey **the traditions** that our ancestors had kept.



## **Galatians 1:15**

**But (ULT)**

What follows the word **But** here is in contrast to what was expected. What would be expected is that Paul would continue thinking and acting according to the way he formerly did as described in [1:14](#). Instead, God **called** Paul, and as the next verse says, God revealed Jesus to him, so that he might teach the Gentiles about Jesus. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "But then" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**the one (ULT)****God (UST)**

Here, the phrase **the one** refers to God. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: "God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**when...the one having set me apart from the womb of my mother and having called {me} through his grace was pleased (ULT)**

The statement **having set me apart from the womb of my mother and having called {me} through his grace** gives us further information about the **the one** (God). It is not making a distinction. If this might confuse your readers, you can make the relationship between these phrases clearer. Alternate translation: "when God, who is the one who set me apart from my mother's womb and called me through his grace, was pleased" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

**from the womb of my mother (ULT)****still in my mother's womb (UST)**

The phrase **from the womb of my mother** is a Hebrew idiom which means either "from the day of my birth" or "from before birth." If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: "from the day I was born" or "from before I was born." (See: [Idiom](#))

**having called {me} (ULT)**

Here, the word **called** means "to choose and summon." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: "having chosen and summoned me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**grace (ULT)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **grace**, you could express the same idea with an adverb such as "kindly", as modeled by the UST, or you could express the meaning in some other way that is natural in your language. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [having set...apart](#)
- [the womb](#)
- [having called {me}](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> But when the one [having set me apart](#) from [the womb](#) of my mother and [having called {me}](#) through his [grace](#) was pleased

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> However, I was still in my mother's [womb](#) when God [chose](#) me to serve him, and he did this because it pleased him to do so.

- grace

## Translation Words - UST

- womb
- chose
- call, call out
- grace, gracious



## Galatians 1:16

### to reveal his Son in me (ULT)

### He showed me that Jesus is his Son (UST)

The phrase **reveal his Son in me** could mean: (1) that God revealed his Son “to” Paul and refer to God revealing to Paul who Jesus really was so that Paul had an inward knowledge of who Jesus really was. Alternate translation: “to reveal to me his Son” (2) that God revealed his Son to others “through” Paul. Alternate translation: “to reveal his Son to others through me” or “to reveal his Son to others by me”

### so that (ULT)

### so that (UST)

The phrase **so that** introduces a purpose clause. After the phrase **so that** Paul states the purpose for which God revealed his Son to Paul, namely so that he **might preach him among the Gentiles**. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: “in order that” (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#) )

### I might preach him (ULT)

### I would tell others the good news about his Son (UST)

Alternate translation: “I might proclaim the good news about God’s Son”

### flesh and blood (ULT)

### any mere humans (UST)

Paul refers figuratively to “human beings” by naming a few of the things that a human being is made of, specifically **flesh and blood**. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language as modeled by the UST. Alternate translation: “any human being” or “any person” or “anyone” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- to reveal
- Son
- Gentiles
- flesh
- blood

## Translation Words - UST

- He showed
- Son
- non-Jews
- any mere humans
- any mere humans

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> to reveal his Son in me, so that I might preach him among the Gentiles, I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood,

### UST

<sup>16</sup> He showed me that Jesus is his Son; he did this so that I would tell others the good news about his Son in regions where the non-Jews live. But I did not immediately go to any mere humans in order to understand that message better.

## Galatians 1:17

### I did go up to Jerusalem (ULT) go to Jerusalem (UST)

**Jerusalem** was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for people to speak of going **up** to Jerusalem and going down from it. Your language may say “come” rather than **go** in contexts such as this. Use whichever is more natural. Alternate translation: “did I come up to Jerusalem” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Instead (ULT) Instead (UST)

What follows the word **Instead** is in contrast to what was expected. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: “Rather” (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

### I went to (ULT) I went away into the region of (UST)

Your language may say “came” rather than **went** in contexts such as this. Use whichever is more natural. Alternate translation: “I came to” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- being} apostles
- Arabia
- returned
- Damascus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- had become apostles
- Arabia
- I returned
- Damascus

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> nor I did go up to [Jerusalem](#) to the ones {being} [apostles](#) before me. Instead, I went to [Arabia](#) and again [returned](#) to [Damascus](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> And I did not immediately leave [Damascus](#) and go to [Jerusalem](#) to see the apostles there, the men who [had become apostles](#) before I became one. Instead, I went away into the region of [Arabia](#), a region of wilderness. Later [I returned](#) once more to the city of [Damascus](#).

## Galatians 1:18

### Then (ULT)

The word **Then\*** indicates that the events Paul will now relate came after the events just described. Use a natural form in your language for indicating this. (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#) )

### I went up to Jerusalem (ULT)

### I went up to Jerusalem (UST)

**Jerusalem** was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for people to speak of going **up** to Jerusalem and going down from it. Your language may say “came” rather than **went** in contexts such as this. Use whichever is more natural. Alternate translation: “I came up to Jerusalem” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- years
- Jerusalem
- Cephas
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- years
- Jerusalem
- Peter
- for...days

### ULT

**18** Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas and I stayed with him 15 days.

### UST

**18** It was actually three years after God revealed this good news to me that I went up to Jerusalem to visit Peter. I stayed with him for fifteen days.

## Galatians 1:19

### another...I did not see...of the apostles except James (ULT)

If it would appear in your language that Paul was making a statement here and then contradicting it, you could reword this to avoid using an exception clause. Alternate translation: “the only other apostles I saw were James” (See: [Connect — Exception Clauses](#) )

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the apostles](#)
- [James](#)
- [brother](#)
- [of the Lord](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [James](#)
- [half-brother](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [apostle](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But I did not see another [of the apostles](#) except [James](#), the [brother of the Lord](#).

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> I also saw [James](#), the [half-brother](#) of our [Lord](#) Jesus and the leader of the believers in Jerusalem, but I did not see any other [apostle](#).

## Galatians 1:20

### behold (ULT)

**behold** is an exclamation word which is used to draw attention to the words that come next. Use an exclamation that is natural in your language for communicating this. Alternate translation: “pay attention to this” (See: [Exclamations](#))

### I am not lying (ULT) is completely true (UST)

Here, Paul uses a phrase that expresses a strong positive meaning by using a negative word together with a word that is the opposite of the intended meaning. If this is confusing in your language, you can express the meaning positively. Alternate translation: “I am telling you the truth” (See: [Litotes](#))

### before God (ULT) God knows (UST)

Here, the phrase **before God** is an oath. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an oath from your language that would be appropriate in this context or you could make it clear in your translation that Paul is making an oath. Alternate translation: “I solemnly testify before God” or “in God’s presence I testify” or “I swear with God as my witness” or “I swear before God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God knows](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Now what I write to you, behold, before [God](#), I am not lying.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [God knows](#) that what I am writing to you is completely true!

## Galatians 1:21

### Then I went to (ULT)

### After I left Jerusalem, I went to (UST)

The word **then** indicates that the events Paul will now relate came after the events Paul has just described in [1:18-19](#). If it would be helpful to your readers, you could show this relationship by using a fuller phrase or by expressing the meaning in some other way that is natural to your readers. Alternate translation: “After I left Jerusalem I went to” or “After that I went to” or “Afterwards I went to” (See: [Connect — Sequential Time Relationship](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Syria
- Cilicia

### Translation Words - UST

- of Syria
- Cilicia

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then I went to the regions of Syria and Cilicia.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> After I left Jerusalem, I went to the regions of Syria and Cilicia.

## Galatians 1:22

**I was...unknown by face to the churches of Judea {that are} in Christ (ULT)  
me...believers in the Christian congregations who were in the province of Judea still had never seen (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “none of the people in the churches of Judea that are in Christ had ever met me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Now I was [unknown by face to the churches of Judea {that are} in Christ](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> At that time [believers in the Christian congregations](#) who were in the province of [Judea](#) still [had never seen](#) me.

**I was...unknown by face to the churches of Judea {that are} in Christ (ULT)  
me...believers in the Christian congregations who were in the province of Judea still had never seen (UST)**

Paul uses the main feature of his appearance, his **face**, to refer figuratively to seeing his entire person. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent expression from your culture or plain language as modeled by the UST. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**in Christ (ULT)  
believers (UST)**

Paul uses the spatial metaphor **in Christ** to describe the union believers have with Christ and here it is specifically describing/modifying **the churches of Judea**. If it would help your readers you could use a fuller phrase to describe what the phrase “in Christ” means here. See the discussion of the phrase “in Christ” in “Part 3: Important Translation Issues” in the “Introduction to 1 Corinthians” section. Alternate translation: “in union with Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [unknown](#)
- [by face](#)
- [to the churches](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [in Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [believers](#)
- [in the Christian congregations](#)
- [in the Christian congregations](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [had never seen](#)





## **Galatians 1:23**

**But (ULT)**

Here, the word **But** is introducing a contrast between what the Judean believers did know about Paul (they were **hearing** that he was **now proclaiming the faith**) with what they did not know about Paul (how he looked, 1:22). Use a natural way in your language for introducing a contrast. Alternate translation: "Rather" (See: [Connect — Contrast Relationship](#))

**only...they were...hearing (ULT)****only...They...heard (UST)**

Alternate translation: "all that the believers in the region of Judea knew about me was that people were saying" or "all that the people belonging to the churches in the region of Judea knew about me was that people were saying"

**The one (ULT)****the one (UST)**

Here, the phrase **The one** refers to Paul. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly as modeled by the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the faith (ULT)****that we believe (UST)**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **faith**, you could express the same idea in some other way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the message about Jesus" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the faith (ULT)****that we believe (UST)**

Paul is figuratively describing the message about Jesus (the gospel) by association with **faith**, which is the response that the message about Jesus requires or solicits. If your readers would not understand this, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: "the good news about Jesus" or "the message about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he...was destroying (ULT)****he had been trying to stop (UST)**

Here, the word **destroying** refers to trying to stop the spread of the Christian message. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly as modeled by the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [persecuting](#)
- [faith](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> But they were only hearing, "The one formerly [persecuting](#) us is now proclaiming the [faith](#) which he formerly was destroying,"

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> They only heard others keep saying, "Paul, the one who in the past [was doing violent things](#) to us, is now proclaiming the same good news that [we believe](#) and he had been trying to stop!"

## Translation Words - UST

- who...was doing violent things
- we believe

## Galatians 1:24

### in me (ULT)

#### because of what had happened to me (UST)

Here, the phrase **in me** means “because of me” and is giving the reason why the Judean believers were praising God, namely because of Paul. If it would help your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “because of me” (See: [Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship](#) )

### in me (ULT)

#### because of what had happened to me (UST)

The phrase **in me** means “because of me” and the phrase “because of me” could mean: (1) both option 2 and 3 at the same time, in which case “because of me” would mean both that the Judean believers were praising God because God had caused Paul to believe in Jesus and because Paul was now proclaiming the good news about Jesus. If you decide to use this meaning you could use a general phrase that allows for both meanings at the same time such as “because of me.” Alternatively you could clarify in your translation that “because of me” refers to both meanings simultaneously. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because of what God has done in me and is doing through me” or “because God caused me to believe in Jesus and is now using me to proclaim the good news about Jesus” or “because God caused me to believe in Jesus and is now using me to proclaim the good news about him” (2) because of what God was doing through Paul, that he was proclaiming the gospel. Alternate translation: “because of what God is doing through me” or “because I am now proclaiming the good news about Jesus” or “because I am now proclaiming the faith which I formerly tried to destroy” (3) because of what happened to Paul, that God caused him to believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: “because of what God has done in me” or “because God caused me to believe in his son”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they glorified](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they kept praising](#)
- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> and [they glorified God](#) in me.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> So [they kept praising God](#) because of what had happened to me.

## Galatians 2

### Galatians 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul continues to defend the true gospel. This began in Galatians 1:11.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Freedom and slavery

Throughout this letter, Paul contrasts freedom and slavery. The Christian is free in Christ to do many different things. But the Christian who attempts to follow the law of Moses needs to follow the whole law. Paul describes trying to follow the law as a type of slavery. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “I do not negate the grace of God”

Paul teaches that, if a Christian attempts to follow the law of Moses, they do not understand the grace God has shown to them. This is a fundamental error. But Paul uses the words “I do not negate the grace of God” as a type of hypothetical situation. The purpose of this statement could be seen as, “If you could be saved by following the law, then it would negate the grace of God.” (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#) and [Hypothetical Situations](#))

## Galatians 2:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to give the history of how he learned the gospel from God, not the apostles.

### I went up (ULT)

### I went up (UST)

Here, **went up** is used because Jerusalem is located in hilly country. The Jews also viewed Jerusalem as the place on earth that is closest to heaven, so Paul may have been speaking figuratively, or it may be that it was reflecting the difficult, uphill, journey to get to Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- years
- Jerusalem
- Barnabas
- Titus

### Translation Words - UST

- years
- Barnabas
- Titus
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then after 14 years I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, also taking Titus along with {me}.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After fourteen years passed, Barnabas, Titus, and I went up again to Jerusalem.

## Galatians 2:2

### the...seeming to be important (ULT)

Alternate translation: “to those who were recognized as the important overseers of the believers” or “with those who were considered leaders of the church”

### I might run—or had run (ULT)

### I had...been working (UST)

Paul uses running as a metaphor to compare his work of preaching the gospel to a person running a race. Paul worked hard to preach the gospel. He wanted the gospel that he preached to have lasting effects. Alternate translation: “I did not want to work hard for God uselessly” or “I did not want my hard work to be wasted”

### lest...in vain (ULT)

Paul feared that if he did not explain the gospel privately to the leaders, they could misunderstand the gospel, or others would misrepresent him. The double negative can be represented positively: “I was doing profitable work” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Metaphor](#)) Alternate translation: “for no benefit” or “for nothing”

### Translation Words - ULT

- a revelation
- gospel
- I proclaim
- Gentiles
- I might run
- had run

### Translation Words - UST

- God had told me we should go
- content of the good news
- I had been proclaiming
- non-Jews
- I had...been working
- I had...been working

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now I went up according to a revelation and set before them the gospel that I proclaim among the Gentiles, but privately to the ones seeming to be important, lest I might run—or had run—in vain.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> We did this because God had told me we should go. I explained privately to the most important leaders of the believers the content of the good news that I had been proclaiming in the regions of the non-Jews. I did this because I wanted to make sure that they approved of what I had been preaching. I wanted to make sure that I had not been working uselessly.

## Galatians 2:3

### to be circumcised (ULT)

### to be circumcised (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to have someone circumcise him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Titus](#)
- [a Greek](#)
- [to be circumcised](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Titus](#)
- [an uncircumcised Gentile](#)
- [to be circumcised](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But not even [Titus](#), the one with me, being [a Greek](#), was forced [to be circumcised](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But those leaders did not even require [Titus](#), who was with me and was [an uncircumcised Gentile](#), [to be circumcised](#).



## Galatians 2:4

### the secretly brought in false brothers (ULT) not true believers (UST)

Alternate translation: "People who pretended to be Christians came into the church," or "People who said they were Christians but were not came into our group"

### But it was because of (ULT)

**But is was because of** could be: (1) connected to v. 1, which gives the reason for why Paul explained the gospel privately to the leaders in Jerusalem (2) connected to v. 3, which explains why people wanted to circumcise Titus (3) unconnected and begins an unfinished sentence.

### so that they will enslave us (ULT)

Paul is speaking about how these people wanted to force the Galatian believers to follow the Jewish rituals that the law commanded. He is speaking about following the law as if it were slavery. Alternate translation: "to force us to obey the law" or "in order to make us slaves to the law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [freedom](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [they will enslave](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Messiah](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [has freed us from those things](#)
- [These false believers would like to make...like slaves to the law](#)
- [in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But it was because of the secretly brought in false brothers, who came in secretly to spy on our [freedom](#) that we have in [Christ Jesus](#) so that [they will enslave](#) us,

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The people who would have required him to be circumcised were not true believers, but they pretended that they were fellow believers. They watched us closely to see how we obey God without following all the Jewish laws and rituals, since we know that [the Messiah Jesus has freed us from those things](#). [These false believers would like to make us like slaves to the law](#).

## Galatians 2:5

### we did...yield in submission (ULT) did we agree (UST)

Alternate translation: "submit," or "listen," or "accept what they were saying," or "agreed with that they wanted to do"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- in submission
- an hour
- truth
- of the gospel

#### Translation Words - UST

- briefly
- did we agree
- true
- good news about the Messiah

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> we did not even yield in submission to them for an hour, so that the truth of the gospel might remain with you.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> But not even briefly did we agree with them about circumcision. We resisted them in order that the true good news about the Messiah might continue to benefit you.

## Galatians 2:6

### to me...added nothing (ULT)

Here, **me** represents what Paul was teaching. Alternate translation: “added nothing to what I teach” or “did not add anything to my message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [does...accept](#)
- [the} face](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [does...favor](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now from the ones seeming to be something (what sort they were formerly matters nothing to me; [God](#) does not [accept {the} face](#) of man)—indeed, the ones seeming important added nothing to me.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But those who others said were the leaders did not add anything to what I proclaim. Those leaders are important men, but they do not matter to me, because [God](#) does not [favor](#) certain persons more than others.

## Galatians 2:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I had been entrusted with
- gospel
- to the uncircumcision
- to the circumcision
- just as
- Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- God was trusting me
- the good news
- non-Jews
- Jews
- just as
- Peter

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But on the contrary, having seen that I had been entrusted with the gospel to the uncircumcision, just as Peter to the circumcision

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Instead, the leaders understood that God was trusting me to proclaim the good news to the non-Jews, just as Peter was proclaiming the good news to the Jews.

## Galatians 2:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- in Peter
- apostleship
- to the circumcision
- Gentiles

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- as an apostle
- Jews
- non-Jews

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> (for the one having worked in Peter for apostleship to the circumcision also worked in me to the Gentiles),

### UST

<sup>8</sup> That is, just as God had empowered Peter to go as an apostle to take God's message to the Jews, he also empowered me to go as an apostle to take his message to the non-Jews.



## **Galatians 2:9**

## seeming to be pillars (ULT) leaders of the believers (UST)

Here, **pillars** refers to men who were leaders of the believers in Jerusalem and taught people the word of God. Alternate translation: “who were like pillars of the church” or “who were recognized as important leaders” or “who were considered to have authority” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## having understood the grace having been given to me (ULT) understood that God had kindly given to me this special mission (UST)

The abstract noun *grace*\* refers to how God gave Paul the task to proclaim the gospel to the non-Jews. Alternate translation: “understood that God had been kind to me and gave me this work” or “understood the work God was kind to give me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## gave {the} right hand...of fellowship (ULT) the ones who shook hands...we were fellow workers with them (UST)

Here, **gave the right hand of fellowship** is an action that symbolizes a pledge of friendship or agreement. Alternate translation: “welcomed...as fellow workers” or “welcomed...with honor” or “shook hands...as a sign that they agreed with us” or “agreed that were partners in this work”(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [having understood](#)
- [grace](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [James](#)
- [Cephas](#)
- [John](#)
- [pillars](#)
- [the} right hand](#)
- [of fellowship](#)
- [to Barnabas](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [understood](#)
- [that God had kindly given...this special mission](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [James](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> and [having understood](#) the [grace](#) having been given to me, [James](#) and [Cephas](#) and [John](#), the ones seeming to be [pillars](#), gave [{the} right hand of fellowship to Barnabas](#) and me, so that we would be to the [Gentiles](#), and they to the [circumcision](#),

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Those leaders [understood that God had kindly given to me this special mission](#). So [James](#), [Peter](#), and [John](#), the [leaders of the believers](#) in the Messiah—the same leaders that many people knew and honored—they were [the ones who shook hands with us](#) because [we were fellow workers with them](#). We agreed that God had sent us to the [non-Jews](#), that is, to those who were not circumcised, and that God had sent them to the [Jews](#), that is, to those who were circumcised.



- Peter
- John
- leaders of the believers
- the ones who shook hands
- with us
- we were fellow workers with them

## Galatians 2:10

**the poor...we might remember (ULT)**

**the poor...to still remember (UST)**

You may need to make explicit how they were to **remember the poor**. Alternate translation: "remember to take care of the needs of the poor" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> only that we might remember the poor, this same {thing} that I was also eager to do.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> They only urged us to still remember to help the poor among the fellow believers who live in Jerusalem. That is exactly what I have been eager to do.

## Galatians 2:11

### I opposed him to his face (ULT)

The phrase **to his face** is a metonym. Alternate translation: “I confronted him in person” or “I challenged his actions in person” or “I opposed him in front of everyone” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cephas](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [face](#)
- [stood condemned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [condemn, condemned, condemnation](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### ULT

**11** Now when [Cephas](#) came to [Antioch](#), I opposed him to his [face](#), because he [stood condemned](#).

### UST

**11** But later while I was in the city of Antioch, after [Peter](#) came there, I looked into his eyes and told him that what he was doing was wrong.

## Galatians 2:12

### being afraid of the ones from {the} circumcision (ULT)

The reason Peter was **afraid** can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "He was afraid that these men who required circumcision would judge that he was doing something wrong" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the ones from {the} circumcision (ULT)

Here, **those from the circumcision** represents Jews who had become Christians, but who demanded that those who believe in Christ live according to Jewish customs like circumcision.

### separated himself (ULT) would not associate with them (UST)

Alternate translation: "stayed away from" or "avoided"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [James](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [separated](#)
- [being afraid of](#)
- [the} circumcision](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [non-jewish believers](#)
- [would not associate with them](#)
- [He was afraid](#)
- [circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For before certain ones came from [James](#), he was eating with the [Gentiles](#). But when they came, he withdrew and [separated](#) himself, [being afraid of](#) the ones from {the} [circumcision](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> This is what happened. Peter went to Antioch and started eating regularly with [non-jewish believers](#) there. Later there were certain Jewish believers who came to Antioch who claimed that [James](#), the leader of the believers in Jerusalem, had sent them. And when those men came, Peter stopped eating with the non-jewish believers and [would not associate with them](#). [He was afraid](#) that the Jewish believers from Jerusalem would criticize him for associating with non-Jews.

## Galatians 2:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Jews
- Barnabas
- by...hypocrisy

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish believers
- Barnabas
- thought he had to stop associating with the non-Jews

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And the rest of the Jews also joined with him, so that even Barnabas was led astray by their hypocrisy.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Also, the other Jewish believers in Antioch joined in Peter's hypocrisy by separating themselves from the non-Jewish believers. Even Barnabas thought he had to stop associating with the non-Jews!

## Galatians 2:14

### they were not walking correctly according to the truth of the gospel (ULT)

Alternate translation: “they were not living like people who believe the true gospel” or “they were not obeying the true gospel”

### how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews (ULT)

### how can you possibly persuade the non-Jews to live like Jews (UST)

This rhetorical question is a rebuke and can be translated as a statement. The word **you** is singular and refers to Peter. Alternate translation: “you are wrong to force the Gentiles to live like Jews” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- truth
- of the gospel
- to Cephas
- a Jew
- a like Jew
- to live like Jews
- live
- like a Gentile
- Gentiles

### Translation Words - UST

- truth
- good news about the Messiah
- to Peter
- Jewish
- Jew, Jewish
- to live like Jews
- like a non-Jew
- non-Jews
- life, live, living, alive

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But when I saw that they were not walking correctly according to the [truth of the gospel](#), I said [to Cephas](#) in front of all {of them}, “If you, being [a Jew](#), [live like a Gentile](#), and not [a like Jew](#), how can you force the [Gentiles to live like Jews](#)?”

### UST

<sup>14</sup> But when I realized that they were not following the [truth](#) of the [good news about the Messiah](#), and when all the fellow believers had come together, I said [to Peter](#) in front of them all, “You are [Jewish](#), but you have been living [like a non-Jew](#) who does not follow the law. So how can you possibly persuade the [non-Jews to live like Jews](#)?”

## Galatians 2:15

### not sinners from {the} Gentiles (ULT)

The term **sinners** was used by Jews as a synonym for non-Jews.  
Alternate translation: "We are not Gentiles, those people who do not know God" or "We are not people who do not follow the law"

### Translation Words - ULT

- are} Jews
- sinners
- the} Gentiles

### Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- non-Jewish
- sinners

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> We {are} Jews by birth, and not sinners from {the} Gentiles;

### UST

<sup>15</sup> We were born as Jews, not as non-Jewish sinners who know nothing about God's law.





## **Galatians 2:16**

## knowing (ULT) we now know (UST)

The word **knowing** could refer to: (1) Paul and others, but not the Galatians (exclusive), who were primarily Gentiles (2) Paul and includes the Galatians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

## no...flesh (ULT) not...anyone (UST)

The word **flesh** is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "no person" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- knowing
- is justified
- we might be justified
- will be justified
- flesh
- works
- works (2)
- works (3)
- of {the} law
- of {the} law (2)
- of {the} law (3)
- faith
- faith (2)
- in Jesus
- Jesus
- Christ
- Christ
- in Christ (2)
- believed
- in Christ Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- we now know
- a person obeys
- we try to obey (2)
- they obey (3)
- anyone
- the law
- the law (2)
- the law (3)
- God makes...right in his sight
- God would declare us good in his sight
- he will...declare...good
- that person trusts
- we trust (2)

## ULT

**16** but **knowing** that no man **is justified** by **works of {the} law** except through **faith in Jesus Christ**, we also **believed in Christ Jesus**, so that **we might be justified by faith in Christ** and not by **works of {the} law**. For by **works of {the} law** no **flesh** will be justified.

## UST

**16** But **we now know** that it is not because **a person obeys the law** that God gave to Moses that **God makes a person right in his sight**. God does that only if **that person trusts in Jesus the Messiah**. Even some of us Jews **have trusted the Messiah Jesus**. We did that so **God would declare us good in his sight**, because **we trust the Messiah**, and not because **we try to obey the law** that God gave to Moses. God has said that **he will not declare anyone good in his sight just because they obey the law**.

- in Jesus
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- the Messiah
- the Messiah (2)
- have trusted
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

## Galatians 2:17

### seeking to be justified in Christ (ULT) we asked God to make us right in his sight by trusting in the Messiah (UST)

The phrase **to be justified in Christ** means justified because we are united with Christ and justified by means of what Christ has done.

### we ourselves were also found {to be} sinners (ULT)

The phrase **were also found to be sinner** could mean: (1) they admit they are sinners (2) they are no longer following the law (3) others view them as sinners for not following the law or eating with non-Jews.

### May it never be (ULT) Certainly not (UST)

Alternate translation: "Of course, that is not true!" or "no, never!" This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question **is Christ a minister of sin?** (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- seeking
- to be justified
- in Christ
- Christ
- is} Christ
- to be} sinners
- of sin
- a minister

### Translation Words - UST

- we asked God
- to make us right in his sight
- in the Messiah
- the Messiah
- the Messiah
- to be sinners
- sin
- is in favor of

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But if, [seeking to be justified in Christ](#), we ourselves were also found [{to be} sinners](#), [{is} Christ then a minister of sin?](#) May it never be!

### UST

<sup>17</sup> But when [we asked God to make us right in his sight](#) by trusting in the [Messiah](#), we stopped trying to obey the law, so the law proved us [to be sinners](#) for doing that. But this certainly does not mean that [the Messiah is in favor of sin](#). Certainly not!

## Galatians 2:18

### I prove myself to be a transgressor (ULT) Everyone would see that I was breaking God's law (UST)

**I prove myself to be a transgressor** could mean: (1) Paul sinned by trying to obey the law again (2) Paul sinned by leaving the law for a time when he believed in the Messiah (3) the law proves Paul is a sinner when he tries to follow it.

### For if I again rebuild those {things} which I destroyed (ULT)

**For if I again rebuild those things which I destroyed** is a metaphor for someone who returns to trying to obey the law after they trusted in the Messiah. He compares trying to follow the law with someone trying to build a building. He compares someone who trusts in the Messiah with someone who destroys the building they are trying to build. He compares someone who returns to trying to follow the law after trusting the Messiah with someone who wants to rebuild the building they destroyed. Alternate translation: "If I believe in Christ to be justified before God instead of following the law, and then I change my mind and start following the law again for justification." (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a transgressor](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [was breaking God's law](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For if I again rebuild those {things} which I destroyed, I prove myself to be [a transgressor](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> If I again believed that God would make me right in his sight because I obey his law, I would be like a man who rebuilds a shaky old building that he had once torn down. Everyone would see that I [was breaking God's law](#).

## Galatians 2:19

### through {the} law (ULT)

The phrase **through the law** could refer to: (1) Paul's experience in trying to obey the law (2) how Christ paid the requirements of the law. Alternate translation: "When the Messiah completed the law"

### I...died to {the} law (ULT)

The phrase, **I...died to the law** means that the law no longer has any power or authority over Paul. Alternate translation: "I am separated from the law"

### I have been crucified with Christ (ULT)

**I have been crucified with Christ** could mean (1) by the Messiah's death, Paul was now separated from the law (2) Paul died spiritually and escaped the dominion of sin and the law.

### Translation Words - ULT

- the} law
- to {the} law
- died
- I might live
- to God
- I have been crucified with
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- became like a dead man
- I might live to worship
- God
- Christ, Messiah
- crucify, crucified
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### ULT

**19** For I, through {the} law, died to {the} law so that I might live to God. I have been crucified with Christ,

### UST

**19** As I was trying to obey God's law, I became like a dead man; it was as if the law had killed me. This happened so that I might live to worship God.

## Galatians 2:20

### of the Son...of God (ULT)

### God's...Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- live
- lives
- I...live (2)
- I live (3)
- Christ
- the} flesh
- faith
- of the Son...of God
- having loved

### Translation Words - UST

- direct my life
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive (2)
- life, live, living, alive (3)
- The Messiah
- God's...Son
- who loved
- faith
- flesh

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me. But that which I now live in {the} flesh, I live in faith that {is} of the Son of God, the one having loved me and having given himself for me.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> It is as though my old way of life ended when the Messiah died on the cross. I no longer direct my life. The Messiah who lives in my heart now directs how I live. And whatever I do now while I live, I do it trusting in God's Son. He is the one who loved me and offered himself as the sacrifice to provide God's forgiveness to me.

## Galatians 2:21

### I do not set aside (ULT)

### I do not set aside (UST)

Paul states a negative to emphasize the positive. Paul is defending a charge others made against him. He does not reject God's grace when he rejects following the law. This phrase can be translated positively. Alternate translation: "I confirm the value of" or "I do not reject God's kindness" or "I do not ignore God's kindness." (See: [Litotes](#))

### if...righteousness {is} through {the} law, then Christ died for nothing (ULT)

Paul is describing a situation that never existed. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### if...righteousness {is} through {the} law (ULT)

Alternate translation: "if people could become righteous by obeying the law" or "if it were possible for a person to become righteous in God's sight by obeying the law".

### then Christ died for nothing (ULT)

### Otherwise, the Messiah would have died on the cross for nothing (UST)

Alternate translation: "then Christ would have accomplished nothing by dying" or "then it was pointless for Christ to die"

### Translation Words - ULT

- I do...set aside
- grace
- of God
- righteousness {is}
- the} law
- Christ
- died

### Translation Words - UST

- I do...set aside
- God's
- kindness
- the law
- could make us right with God
- the Messiah
- would have died on the cross

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> I do not set aside the grace of God, for if righteousness {is} through {the} law, then Christ died for nothing!

### UST

<sup>21</sup> I do not set aside God's kindness, as if keeping the law could make us right with God. Otherwise, the Messiah would have died on the cross for nothing.



## Galatians 3

### Galatians 3 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Equality in Christ

All Christians are equally united to Christ. Ancestry, gender, and status do not matter. All are equal with each other. All are equal in the eyes of God.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses many different rhetorical questions in this chapter. He uses them to convince the Galatians of their sin. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is possibly a metaphor for our sinful nature. Paul is not teaching that the physical part of man is sinful. "Flesh" is used in this chapter to contrast with that which is spiritual. (See: [flesh](#))

#### "Those of faith are children of Abraham"

Scholars are divided on what this means. Some believe Christians inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham, so Christians replace the physical descendants of Israel. Others believe Christians spiritually follow Abraham, but they do not inherit the promises that God gave to Abraham. In light of Paul's other teachings and the context here, Paul is probably writing about the Jewish and Gentile Christians sharing the same faith as Abraham did. (See: [spirit, wind, breath](#) and [Metaphor](#))

## Galatians 3:1

### General Information:

Paul is rebuking the Galatians by asking rhetorical questions.

### Who bewitched you (ULT)

### Someone must have bewitched you (UST)

Paul is using irony and a rhetorical question to say that the Galatians are acting as though someone has put a spell on them. He does not really believe that someone has put a spell on them. Alternate translation: "You behave as if someone has put a spell on you!" (See: [Irony](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### foolish (ULT)

### very foolish (UST)

Alternate translation: "without understanding" or "stupid"

### bewitched you (ULT)

### must have bewitched you (UST)

Alternate translation: "done magic on you" or "done witchcraft on you"

### before whose eyes Jesus Christ was publicly portrayed {as} crucified (ULT)

This metaphor describes how the Galatian believers heard the gospel message preached so clearly that it was as if Jesus was crucified before their own eyes. Alternate translation: "You yourselves heard the clear teaching about Jesus being crucified" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [foolish](#)
- [Galatians](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [as} crucified](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow believers there in Galatia](#)
- [very foolish](#)
- [how they had crucified](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> O [foolish Galatians](#)! Who bewitched you, before whose eyes [Jesus Christ](#) was publicly portrayed {as} [crucified](#)?

### UST

<sup>1</sup> You [fellow believers there in Galatia](#) are [very foolish](#)! Someone must have bewitched you with their evil eye! I told you exactly [how they had crucified Jesus the Messiah](#), did I not?

## Galatians 3:2

### I want to learn only this from you (ULT) I want you to tell me only one thing (UST)

This continues the irony from verse 1. Paul knows the answers to the rhetorical questions he is about to ask. (See: [Irony](#))

### Did you receive the Spirit by works of {the} law or by hearing of faith (ULT)

Alternate translation: "You received the Spirit, not by doing what the law says, but by believing what you heard." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Did you receive](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [works](#)
- [of {the} law](#)
- [of faith](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Spirit](#)
- [came](#)
- [you were obeying](#)
- [the law](#)
- [trusted in the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> I want to learn only this from you: [Did you receive](#) the [Spirit](#) by [works of {the} law](#) or by hearing [of faith](#)?

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So I want you to tell me only one thing: When the Holy [Spirit came](#) to you, did he come because [you were obeying the law](#) of Moses? Or did the Spirit come to you because you had heard the good news and [trusted in the Messiah](#)? Certainly this is what happened.

## Galatians 3:3

### Are you so foolish (ULT)

Alternate translation: "You are very foolish!" or "Don't be so foolish!" or "are you crazy" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### by flesh (ULT)

### by trying as hard as possible to obey the law (UST)

The word **flesh** is a metonym and refers to an independent reliance on one's own effort through outward deeds . Alternate translation: "by your own effort" or "by your own work" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [foolish](#)
- [by Spirit](#)
- [by flesh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [very foolish](#)
- [because God's Spirit enabled you](#)
- [by trying as hard as possible to obey the law](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Are you so [foolish](#)? Having begun [by Spirit](#), are you now finishing [by flesh](#)?

### UST

<sup>3</sup> You are [very foolish](#)! You first became Christians [because God's Spirit enabled you](#). But now you think you will continue until you die [by trying as hard as possible to obey the law](#).



## **Galatians 3:4**

**Have you suffered so many {things} for nothing (ULT)**  
**All the difficult things you have experienced after you believed in the Messiah would have been of no value (UST)**

Paul uses this rhetorical question to remind the Galatians that when they were suffering, they believed that they would receive some benefit. Alternate translation: "Surely you did not think that you were suffering so many things for nothing...!" or "Surely you knew that there was some good purpose for suffering so many things...!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Have you suffered (ULT)**  
**All the difficult things you have experienced (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) suffering from persecution (2) the spiritual benefits they have experienced.

**Have you suffered so many {things} for nothing (ULT)**  
**All the difficult things you have experienced after you believed in the Messiah would have been of no value (UST)**

It can be stated clearly that they had suffered these things because of people who opposed them for their faith in Christ. Alternate translation: "Have you suffered so many things by those who opposed you for your faith in Christ for nothing" or "You believed in Christ, and you suffered many things by those who oppose Christ. Were your belief and suffering for nothing" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for nothing (ULT)**  
**would have been of no value (UST)**

Alternate translation: "uselessly" or "in vain"

**if indeed it was really for nothing (ULT)**

This could mean: (1) Paul warns them not to let their experiences be for nothing. Alternate translation: "Do not let it be for nothing!" or "Do not stop believing in Jesus Christ and let your suffering be for nothing." (2) their suffering was already in vain. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Have you suffered](#)
- [for nothing](#)
- [it was...for nothing \(2\)](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [All the difficult things you have experienced](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> [Have you suffered](#) so many {things} [for nothing](#)—if indeed [it was](#) really [for nothing](#)?

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> [All the difficult things you have experienced](#) after you believed in the Messiah [would have been of no value](#) at all if you had not been trusting in him.

- would have been of no value
- vain, vanity (2)



## Galatians 3:5

### is it} by works of {the} law, or by hearing of faith (ULT)

Paul asks another rhetorical question to remind the Galatians how people receive the Spirit. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### is it} by works of {the} law (ULT) because you obey God's law (UST)

This represents people doing the works that the law requires.  
Alternate translation: "because you do what the law tells us to do"

### by hearing of faith (ULT) when you heard the good news about the Messiah, you trusted in him (UST)

Your language may require that what the people heard and whom they trusted be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "because you heard the message and had faith in Jesus" or "because you listened to the message and trusted in Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- miracles
- works
- of {the} law
- of faith

## Translation Words - UST

- Spirit
- mighty deeds
- you obey
- God's law
- you trusted in him

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Therefore, the one providing the Spirit to you and working miracles among you, {is it} by works of {the} law, or by hearing of faith?

### UST

<sup>5</sup> When God now generously gives to you his Spirit and performs mighty deeds among you, do you think that it is because you obey God's law? Surely you know it is because when you heard the good news about the Messiah, you trusted in him!

## Galatians 3:6

### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that even Abraham received righteousness by faith and not by the law.

### it was credited to him as righteousness (ULT)

God saw Abraham's faith in God, so then God considered Abraham righteous.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Just as
- Abraham
- believed
- God
- righteousness

### Translation Words - UST

- Abraham
- trusted
- God
- good in his sight
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Just as Abraham "believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness,"

### UST

<sup>6</sup> What you have experienced is just as Moses had written in the scriptures about Abraham. He wrote that Abraham trusted God, and as a result God declared Abraham good in his sight.

## Galatians 3:7

### the ones by faith (ULT)

Alternate translation: "those who believe" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### these are sons of Abraham (ULT) them whom God has made into descendants of Abraham (UST)

Since Abraham was saved by faith, Abraham's true children are those who are also saved by faith as he was. This phrase goes against the opponents who claimed that the Galatian believers must be circumcised and obey the law in order to be a genuine son of Abraham. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [know](#)
- [faith](#)
- [sons](#)
- [of Abraham](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You should realize](#)
- [who trust in the Messiah](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [of Abraham](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [know](#), then, that the ones by [faith](#), these are [sons of Abraham](#).

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> [You should realize](#), therefore, that it is those [who trust in the Messiah](#) to save them whom God has made into [descendants of Abraham](#).

## Galatians 3:8

### But the scripture, having foreseen (ULT)

Here, **the scripture** is a personification and is equivalent to saying “the Lord” or “God”. Alternate translation: “God predicted” or “the Lord saw ahead of time” (See: [Personification](#))

### In you (ULT)

### Because of what you have done (UST)

The word **you** refers to Abraham and is singular. Alternate translation: “Because of you” or “Because of what you have done” or “Because I have blessed you.” (See: [Forms of You](#))

### the Gentiles...all (ULT)

### non-Jews...all (UST)

God was emphasizing that he was not favoring only the Jewish people, his chosen group. His plan of salvation was for both Jews and non-Jews.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture](#)
- [God](#)
- [justifies](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [faith](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [nations \(2\)](#)
- [will be blessed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [good in his sight](#)
- [they trusted in him](#)
- [scriptures](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [I will bless](#)
- [people groups in the world \(2\)](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But the [scripture](#), having foreseen that [God justifies](#) the [Gentiles](#) by [faith](#), preached the gospel beforehand [to Abraham](#), “In you all the [nations will be blessed](#).”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Even before [God](#) began to make [non-Jews good in his sight](#) when [they trusted in him](#), men wrote in the [scriptures](#) that he would do this. God announced this good news [to Abraham](#), as we read in the scriptures, “Because of what you have done, [I will bless](#) all the [people groups in the world](#).”

## Galatians 3:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- are blessed
- faithful
- Abraham

### Translation Words - UST

- who trust in the Messiah
- God blesses
- Abraham
- trusted in God

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So then, the ones by **faith** are **blessed** along with the **faithful Abraham**.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So, we know by this that it is all those **who trust in the Messiah** whom **God blesses** along with **Abraham**, who also **trusted in God**.

## Galatians 3:10

### For as many as...of works of {the} law (ULT)

Alternate translation: "All people who follow the law" or "Everyone who tries to be justified through obeying the law"

### For as many as are of works of {the} law are under a curse (ULT)

Here, **under a curse** represents being cursed by God. Here it refers to eternal punishment. Alternate translation: "are cursed" or "God will eternally punish" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- works
- of {the} law
- of the law (2)
- a curse
- Cursed {is}
- it is written
- written

### Translation Words - UST

- God curses
- God will eternally punish
- by obeying
- his law
- law (2)
- you can read in the scriptures
- wrote

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For as many as are of [works of {the} law](#) are under [a curse](#); for [it is written](#), "[Cursed {is}](#) everyone who does not abide by all the {things} [written](#) in the book [of the law](#) to do them."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [God curses](#) all those who think they can please God [by obeying his law](#). It is just as [you can read in the scriptures](#), "[God will eternally punish](#) everyone who does not continuously and completely obey all the laws that Moses [wrote](#) in the book of the [law](#)."

## Galatians 3:11

### is} clear (ULT)

Alternate translation: "it is obvious that" or "it is evident that"

### no one is justified before God by {the} law (ULT)

Alternate translation: "God justifies no one by the law"

### The righteous will live by faith (ULT) Every person whom God declares to be good will live because he trusts God (UST)

The nominal adjective **righteous**" refers to people who righteous. Alternate translation: "Righteous people will live by faith" or "The person who is righteous because he believes will live" "It is through believing that a person becomes righteous and obtains eternal life" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

#### ULT

**11** Now, that no one **is justified** before God by {the} law {is} clear, because, "The **righteous will live** by **faith**."

#### UST

**11** But God has said that if he declares any people good in his sight, it will not be because they obeyed his law. You can read in the scriptures, "Every person **whom God declares to be good will live** because **he trusts God**."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is justified](#)
- [God](#)
- [the} law](#)
- [righteous](#)
- [will live](#)
- [faith](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whom God declares to be good](#)
- [will live](#)
- [he trusts God](#)
- [God](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)

## Galatians 3:12

**will live in them (ULT)**  
**must obey them all (UST)**

Alternate translation: "will live because of them" or "will because he obeyed them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- faith
- will live

### Translation Words - UST

- tries to obey the law
- trusting in the Messiah
- must obey

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Now the law is not by faith, but, "The one doing these {things} will live in them."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Whoever tries to obey the law is not trusting in the Messiah, "Whoever starts to do the things in the law must obey them all."



## Galatians 3:13

### from the curse of the law (ULT)

The word **curse** is a metonym for God condemning the person whom he has cursed. Alternate translation: “from God condemn us because we broke the law” or “from being cursed because of the law” or “from being cursed for not obeying the law” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### everyone...hanging on a tree (ULT) whom they hang on a tree (UST)

Paul expected his audience to understand that he was referring to Jesus hanging on the cross.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [redeemed](#)
- [curse](#)
- [a curse](#)
- [Cursed {is}](#)
- [of the law](#)
- [it is written](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The Messiah](#)
- [stopped God](#)
- [having to curse](#)
- [God cursed the Messiah in our place](#)
- [God curses](#)
- [You can read in the scripture](#)
- [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> [Christ redeemed](#) us from the [curse of the law](#), having become [a curse](#) for us— for [it is written](#), “[Cursed {is}](#) everyone hanging on a tree”—

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [The Messiah stopped God](#) from [having to curse](#) us as they wrote in the law he must. This happened when [God cursed the Messiah in our place](#). You can read in the scripture, “[God curses](#) everyone whom they hang on a tree.”

## Galatians 3:14

### so that...the blessing of Abraham might come (ULT)

Alternate translation: "Because Christ became a curse for us, the blessing of Abraham will come"

### we might receive (ULT) we might receive (UST)

The word **we** includes the people who would read the letter. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- blessing
- of Abraham
- Gentiles
- Christ Jesus
- Christ
- faith
- we might receive
- promise
- of the Spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- bless
- non-Jews
- we might receive
- Spirit
- whom he promised
- trust in the Messiah
- Christ, Messiah
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Abraham, Abram

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> so that the [blessing of Abraham](#) might come to the [Gentiles](#) in [Christ Jesus](#), so that through [faith](#) [we might receive](#) the [promise of the Spirit](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> God cursed the Messiah in order to [bless](#) the [non-Jews](#) who believe in the Messiah just as he blessed Abraham. And he blessed the non-Jews so that [we might receive](#) the [Spirit](#), [whom he promised](#) to all who [trust in the Messiah](#).

## Galatians 3:15

### Brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers (UST)

See how you translated this in [Galatians 1:2](#).

### according to man (ULT)

Alternate translation: “from a human standpoint” or “with a human analogy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Brothers](#)
- [sets aside](#)
- [a covenant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [My fellow believers](#)
- [a contract](#)
- [can cancel it](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> [Brothers](#), I speak according to man. Nevertheless, no one [sets aside](#) or adds to [a covenant](#) established by man.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [My fellow believers](#), God's promise is like [a contract](#) between two people. After they sign it, no one [can cancel it](#), nor can they add anything to it.

## Galatians 3:16

### Now (ULT)

This word shows that Paul has stated a general principle and is now beginning to introduce a specific case.

### as to many (ULT)

Alternate translation: "referring to many descendants"

### to your seed (ULT) your descendant (UST)

The word **your** is singular and refers to a specific person who is a descendant of Abraham (and that descendant is identified as "Christ"). (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- promises
- to Abraham
- to...seed
- to seeds
- to...seed
- as
- as (2)
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- God promised to bless
- Abraham
- special descendant
- descendants
- descendant
- that is
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if (2)
- the Messiah

### ULT

**16** Now the [promises](#) were spoken [to Abraham](#) and to his [seed](#). It does not say, "and [to seeds](#)," [as](#) to many, but [as](#) to one, "and to your [seed](#)," who is [Christ](#).

### UST

**16** [God](#) promised to [bless Abraham](#) and his [special descendant](#). The scriptures do not say, "your [descendants](#)," [that is](#), many people, but instead "your [descendant](#)," meaning just one person, [the Messiah](#).

## Galatians 3:17

### The...after 430 years (ULT)

Alternate translation: "four hundred and thirty years" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- years
- the} covenant
- God
- promise

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- an agreement
- the law
- years
- promise, promised

### ULT

**17** Now I say this: The law, having come after 430 years, does not set aside {the} covenant previously established by God to nullify the promise.

### UST

**17** This is what I am saying. God established an agreement with Abraham that the law which he gave to Moses 430 years later could not cancel.

## Galatians 3:18

### For if the inheritance {is} from {the} law, {it is} no longer from promise (ULT)

Paul is speaking of a situation that did not exist to emphasize that the inheritance came only by means of the promise. Alternate translation: “the inheritance comes to us by means of the promise, because we could not keep the demands of God’s law” (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### inheritance (ULT) what God is giving to us forever (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were an **inheritance** of property. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- inheritance
- the} law
- promise
- a promise (2)
- God
- to Abraham

### Translation Words - UST

- what God is giving to us forever
- his law
- he had promised
- had freely promised (2)
- Abraham
- he

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For if the inheritance {is} from {the} law, {it is} no longer from promise. But God has shown kindness to Abraham through a promise.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> This is because if what God is giving to us forever comes because we keep his law, then he would not be giving it because he had promised to do so. In reality, however, God gave Abraham this gift because he had freely promised to give it.



## **Galatians 3:19**



## What, then, {is} the law (ULT) So why did God later give his law (UST)

This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what the purpose of the law is." or "Let me tell you why God gave the law." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### It was added (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God added it" or "God added the law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### having been put into effect through angels by {the} hand of a mediator (ULT)

God used angels to give the law to Moses. Moses is referred here as a **mediator** between God and the people of Israel. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "God issued the law with the help of angels, and a mediator put it into force" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the} hand of a mediator (ULT) the authority of the one who would stand between God and people (UST)

Alternate translation: "given through a middleman"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- transgressions
- having been put into effect
- angels
- the} hand
- of a mediator
- seed
- the promise had been made

### Translation Words - UST

- law
- we all deliberately break it
- descendent
- who receives the promise
- angels
- the authority of
- the one who would stand between God and people
- ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> What, then, {is} the law? It was added because of [transgressions](#), [having been put into effect](#) through [angels](#) by {the} [hand of a mediator](#) until the [seed](#) would come to whom [the promise had been made](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> So why did God later give his [law](#) to us? God gave his law to teach us that [we all deliberately break it](#). And looking forward, God gave the law for the time when a descendent of Abraham would come. That [descendent](#) is the one [who receives the promise](#) that was made before to Abraham. The [angels](#) protected and applied the law by [the authority of the one who would stand between God and people](#).

## Galatians 3:20

### Now a mediator implies more than one person, but God is one

God gave his promise to Abraham without a mediator, but he gave the law to Moses, who was a mediator between God and the people of Israel.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- a mediator
- God

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- mediator

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Now a mediator is not for one, but God is one.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Now, when one person speaks directly with another, there is no mediator. And God himself made his promises directly to Abraham.

## Galatians 3:21

### General Information:

The word **us** in this section is inclusive and refers to all Christians. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### against the promises (ULT) speak against what God promises (UST)

Alternate translation: "opposed to the promises" or "in conflict with the promises"

### righteousness would have come by {the} law (ULT)

Alternate translation: "we could have become righteous by obeying that law"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- the} law
- promises
- to make alive
- righteousness

### Translation Words - UST

- law
- law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God
- God promises
- live forever with God
- good in his sight

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Therefore {is} the law against the promises? May it never be! For if a law was given being able to make alive, then righteousness would have come by {the} law.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> So do the words of the law speak against what God promises? Certainly not. If we could obey the law and then live forever with God, then he certainly would have regarded us as good in his sight.

## Galatians 3:22

### the scripture (ULT)

### the law in the scriptures (UST)

This could refer to: (1) a particular passage of Scripture (2) all of scripture (3) a metonymy for God himself. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture](#)
- [imprisoned](#)
- [sin](#)
- [promise](#)
- [faith](#)
- [in Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [believing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we sin](#)
- [scriptures](#)
- [controls us](#)
- [when God promised to free us](#)
- [who believes](#)
- [in Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But the [scripture imprisoned](#) all {things} under [sin](#) so that the [promise](#) by [faith in Jesus Christ](#) might be given to the ones [believing](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But that was impossible. Instead, because [we sin](#), the law in the [scriptures controls us](#)—and all things—just as if we were in prison. So [when God promised to free us](#) from that prison, he was speaking about anyone [who believes in Jesus the Messiah](#).

## Galatians 3:23

**we were held captive under {the} law,  
imprisoned (ULT)  
his law was like a soldier who kept us in  
prison (UST)**

The way the law controlled us is spoken of as if the law were a prison guard holding us as captives. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the law held us captive in prison" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**to the faith about to be revealed (ULT)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "until God would reveal that he justifies those who have faith in Christ" or "until God would reveal that he justifies those who trust in Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)
- [faith \(2\)](#)
- [we were held captive...imprisoned](#)
- [the} law](#)
- [to be revealed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God revealed the good news about how people should trust in the Messiah](#)
- [faith \(2\)](#)
- [law](#)
- [kept us in prison](#)
- [reveal, revealed, revelation](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Now before [faith](#) came, [we were held captive](#) under {the} law, [imprisoned](#) to the [faith](#) about [to be revealed](#).

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Before [God revealed the good news about how people should trust in the Messiah](#), his [law](#) was like a soldier who [kept us in prison](#), unable to move about.

## Galatians 3:24

### guardian (ULT)

### God was supervising (UST)

A **guardian** was usually a slave who was responsible for enforcing rules and behaviors given by the parent and would report to the parent on the child's actions. (See: [Personification](#))

### so that...we might be justified (ULT)

### so that...he might now declare us good in his sight (UST)

Before Christ came, God had planned to justify us. When Christ came, he carried out his plan to justify us. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that God would declare us to be righteous" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [guardian](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [we might be justified](#)
- [faith](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God was supervising](#)
- [by his law](#)
- [until the Messiah came](#)
- [he might now declare us good in his sight](#)
- [we trust in the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So then the [law](#) became our [guardian](#) until [Christ](#), so that [we might be justified](#) by [faith](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Like a father protects his small child by telling a slave to take care of him, [God was supervising us by his law until the Messiah came](#). He did this so that [he might now declare us good in his sight](#), if [we trust in the Messiah](#).

## Galatians 3:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- faith
- a guardian

### Translation Words - UST

- we can trust in the Messiah
- God's law to supervise us

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But **faith** having come, we are no longer under **a guardian**.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> But now that **we can trust in the Messiah**, we no longer need **God's law to supervise us**.

## Galatians 3:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sons of God
- of God
- faith
- in Christ Jesus
- Christ
- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- God's
- you have trusted
- in the Messiah Jesus
- the Messiah
- Jesus
- sons of God, children of God

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> For you are all **sons of God** through **faith in Christ Jesus**.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> I say this because you are all **God's children** because **you have trusted in the Messiah Jesus**.



## Galatians 3:27

### For as many as have been baptized into Christ (ULT)

Alternate translation: "For all of you who were baptized into Christ"

### put on Christ (ULT) have taken on the characteristics of the Messiah's life (UST)

This is a metaphor that means they have been united to Christ and have put on his character of righteousness and virtue. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [have been baptized](#)
- [into Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Christ \(2\)](#)
- [put on](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [trust in the Messiah](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [of the Messiah's life \(2\)](#)
- [were baptized](#)
- [have taken on the characteristics](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For as many as [have been baptized into Christ](#) [put on Christ](#).

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> All of you who [trust in the Messiah](#) and [were baptized](#) so that you are joined to him, [have taken on the characteristics of the Messiah's life](#).

## Galatians 3:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jew
- Greek
- slave
- free
- Christ
- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- non-Jews
- slaves
- free persons
- the Messiah
- Jesus

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> If you are believers, it does not matter to God if you are Jews or non-Jews, slaves or free persons, males or females, because all of you are together joined to the Messiah Jesus.

## Galatians 3:29

### heirs (ULT)

### you will receive everything (UST)

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Christ](#)
- [seed](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [heirs](#)
- [promise](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to the Messiah](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [you will receive everything](#)
- [that God has promised him](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Now if you {are} [of Christ](#), then you are [seed of Abraham](#), [heirs](#) according to [promise](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Furthermore, since you belong [to the Messiah](#), he makes you into [descendants of Abraham](#), and [you will receive everything that God has promised him](#) and us.

## Galatians 4

### Galatians 4 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 27, which is quoted from the Old Testament.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Sonship

Sonship is a complex issue. Scholars have many views on Israel's sonship. Paul uses sonship to teach how being under the law differs from being free in Christ. Not all of Abraham's physical descendants inherited God's promises to him. Only his descendants through Isaac and Jacob inherited the promises. And God only adopts into his family those who follow Abraham spiritually through faith. They are children of God with an inheritance. Paul calls them "children of promise." (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#), [promise](#), [promised](#), [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#) and [faith](#) and [adoption](#), [adopt](#), [adopted](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Abba, Father

"Abba" is an Aramaic word. In ancient Israel, people used it to informally refer to their fathers. Paul "transliterates" its sounds by writing them with Greek letters. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

## Galatians 4:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the Galatian believers that Christ came to redeem those who were under the law, and that he rescued them from their enslavement to the law and to sin and has made them God's children.

### Translation Words - ULT

- time
- heir
- a child
- a slave
- master

### Translation Words - UST

- who will later possess
- as long as
- heir
- a child
- a slave

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now I say, for as much time as the heir is a child, he is no different from a slave, being master of all.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Now, I will further discuss children and heirs. An heir is a son who will later possess all that his father has. But as long as that heir is a child, he is like a slave whom others control.

## Galatians 4:2

### guardians (ULT)

The word **guardians** refers to people with legal responsibility for the personal life of a child. Alternate translation: "people supervise the child".

### stewards (ULT)

The word **stewards** refers to people who watch over the property and finances of the child. Alternate translation: "people manage the child's possessions".

### Translation Words - ULT

- stewards
- date appointed by
- father

### Translation Words - UST

- day that...has previously determined
- father
- manager, steward, stewardship

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But he is under guardians and stewards until the date appointed by {his} father.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Until the day that his father has previously determined, other persons supervise the child and manage his property.

## Galatians 4:3

### we were (ULT)

### we were (UST)

The word **we** here refers to all Christians, including Paul's readers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### when we were children (ULT)

### when we were like young children (UST)

Here **children** is a metaphor for the time before someone trusts in the Messiah. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the elemental principles of the world (ULT)

### the evil rules that everyone in this world (UST)

This could refer to: (1) the laws, knowledge, or moral principles of the world (2) the spiritual beings, which some people thought control what happens on earth (3) the Jewish religion.

### were being enslaved (ULT)

Here, **we were being enslaved** is a metaphor for being unable to stop one's self from doing something. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the spirits that ruled the world had made us their slaves," or "the spirits that ruled the world had caused us to serve them like slaves." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)
- [enslaved](#)
- [of the world](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [like young children](#)
- [world](#)
- [control their slaves](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So also, when we were [children](#), we were being [enslaved](#) by the elemental principles [of the world](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Likewise, when we were [like young children](#), we were under the evil rules that everyone in this [world](#) lives by. Those rules controlled us like masters [control their slaves](#).

## Galatians 4:4

### Son (ULT)

### Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### the fullness of time (ULT)

### the time that God had determined (UST)

Here, **the fullness of time** shows that God was working his purposes throughout history. It emphasizes a time designated by God to deliver people from their helplessness and enslavement to the Law and to those forces that are opposed to God. Alternate translation: "at the proper time" or "at the designated time"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of time](#)
- [God](#)
- [sent forth](#)
- [Son](#)
- [the} law](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [he](#)
- [sent](#)
- [Son](#)
- [he had to obey the law](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But when the fullness [of time](#) came, [God sent forth](#) his [Son](#), having been born from a woman, having been born under [{the} law](#),

### UST

<sup>4</sup> But when the [time](#) that God had determined arrived, [he sent](#) Jesus, his [Son](#), into the world. Jesus was born to a human mother, and [he had to obey the law](#).



## Galatians 4:5

### he might redeem (ULT) to rescue us (UST)

Paul uses the metaphor of a person buying back lost property or buying the freedom of a slave as a picture of Jesus paying for his people's sins by dying on the cross. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he might redeem](#)
- [the} law](#)
- [we might receive](#)
- [adoption as sons](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to rescue us](#)
- [the law](#)
- [to adopt us as his own children](#)
- [to adopt us as his own children](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> in order that [he might redeem](#) the ones under [{the} law](#), so that [we might receive](#) the [adoption as sons](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> God sent Jesus [to rescue us](#) from the [law](#) controlling us. He did this [to adopt us as his own children](#).



## **Galatians 4:6**

## you are sons (ULT) you are now God's sons (UST)

Paul uses the word for male child here because the subject is inheritance. In his culture and that of his readers, inheritance passed most commonly, but not always, to male children. He was neither specifying nor excluding female children here.

## of his Son (ULT) of his Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#)) The Holy Spirit is intimately linked to God's Son. The Spirit was the promise of the Son (Jn. 14) as well as of the Father. It is by the Spirit that Christ lives in our hearts.

## into our hearts (ULT) to live in each of us (UST)

The heart is metonym for the center and source of the whole inner life of a person. It is the source of thinking, feeling, and volition. Alternate translation: "to live in us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## crying out (ULT) to call (UST)

The Spirit is the subject of the one "crying out." Yet this also expresses the believer's attitude as well. It is important to avoid translating this verb in a way that would suggest either shouting or weeping.

## God...Abba...Father (ULT)

By calling out **Abba, Father** the Spirit assures us that we are God's children and he loves us. **Abba** is an Aramaic word that was used by a child to address their father.

## Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- God
- sent
- Spirit
- of...Son
- hearts
- crying out
- Father

## Translation Words - UST

- God's sons
- he
- sent
- Spirit

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying out, "Abba, Father."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Because you are now God's sons, he sent the Spirit of his Son to live in each of us. It is his Spirit who enables us to call God, "Father, our dear Father!" This shows that we are God's sons.

- Son
- each of us
- to call
- Father

## Galatians 4:7

### a son (ULT)

Paul uses **son** here because the subject is inheritance. In his culture and that of his readers, inheritance passed most commonly, but not always, to male children. He was neither specifying nor excluding female children here.

### you are (ULT)

Paul is addressing his readers as though they are one person, so **you** here is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### an heir (ULT)

### God will also give you all that he has promised (UST)

The word **heir** refers to how believers inherit the promises God made to Abraham like a person inherits property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a slave
- a son
- a son (2)
- an heir
- God

### Translation Words - UST

- a slave
- God will also give you all that he has promised
- God will...give you all that he has promised
- sons of God, children of God
- sons of God, children of God (2)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So then, you are no longer a slave, but a son, and if a son, also an heir through God.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> So, because of what God has done, no longer is each of you like a slave. Instead, each of you is a child of God. Since each of you is now God's child, God will also give you all that he has promised. God himself will do it!

## Galatians 4:8

### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that they are again trying to live under God's laws rather than living by faith.

### the ones by nature not being gods (ULT)

The phrase, **those, by nature, not being gods** refers to the beings which the Galatians served when they were pagans and were considered by them to be gods, but they were not really gods

### Translation Words - ULT

- at that time
- having known
- God
- you were enslaved to
- gods

### Translation Words - UST

- When
- you did...know
- God
- gods
- You were their slaves

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But **at that time**, not **having known God**, you were enslaved to the ones by nature not being **gods**.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> **When you did** not **know God**, you worshiped **gods** that really did not really exist. **You were their slaves**.

## Galatians 4:9

### are you turning again (ULT)

### are you returning again to follow (UST)

Here, **turning again** is a metaphor for starting to follow and obey their former false religion practices. This is the first of two rhetorical questions Paul gives. Alternate translation: "you should not start obeying again." or "you should not follow again." (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the weak and worthless elemental principles (ULT)

### the weak and worthless evil rules (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Galatians 4:3](#).

### to which once more you want to be enslaved again (ULT)

Paul uses this rhetorical question to rebuke the Galatian believers for behaving in a way that would make them like slaves. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to which once more you want to be enslaved again (ULT)

Here, **to be enslaved again** is a metaphor for being obligated to obey certain rules or customs. Alternate translation: "Do you want to have to obey rules again like a slave must obey his master?" or "It seems that you want to be controlled by these rules all over again!" (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [having come to know](#)
- [having come to be known](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [are you turning](#)
- [to be enslaved](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [you do know](#)
- [God knows each of you](#)
- [God](#)
- [God knows each of you](#)
- [are you returning...to follow](#)
- [to become their slaves](#)

## ULT

<sup>9</sup> But now, [having come to know God](#), or rather, [having come to be known by God](#), how [are you turning](#) again to the weak and worthless elemental principles, to which once more you want [to be enslaved](#) again?

## UST

<sup>9</sup> But now [you do know God](#) as your God. Perhaps it would be better, however, to say that now [God knows each of you](#). So why [are you returning](#) again [to follow](#) the weak and worthless evil rules of this world? You do not really want [to become their slaves](#) all over again, do you?



## Galatians 4:10

### You observe days and new moons and seasons and years

Paul is speaking of their being careful to celebrate certain times, thinking that doing that will make them right with God. Alternate translation: "You carefully celebrate days and new moons and seasons and years"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- days
- months
- seasons

#### Translation Words - UST

- certain special days
- certain months
- seasons

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> You observe days and months and seasons and years!

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> It actually seems that you do! You are once more obeying what others insist you should do on certain special days and at special times in certain months, seasons, and years.

## Galatians 4:11

**for nothing (ULT)**

**for nothing (UST)**

Alternate translation: “may have been useless” or “has not had any effect”

### Translation Words - ULT

- I am afraid
- I have labored
- for nothing

### Translation Words - UST

- I worry
- I worked so hard
- for nothing

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> I am afraid for you lest I have labored among you for nothing.

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> I worry about you! I worked so hard for you, but it seems that it was all for nothing.

## Galatians 4:12

### Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers how kindly they treated him when he was with them, and he encourages them to continue to trust him while he is not there with them.

### brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers (UST)

See how you translated this in [Galatians 1:2](#) and [Galatians 3:15](#).

### You did me no harm (ULT)

### you did not harm me at all (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “You treated me well” or “You treated me as you should have”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [as](#)
- [am} as \(2\)](#)
- [You did...harm](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [My fellow believers](#)
- [like](#)
- [like \(2\)](#)
- [you did...harm](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I beg you, [brothers](#), become [as](#) I am, for I also [am} as](#) you. [You did](#) me no [harm](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [My fellow believers](#), I strongly urge you to become [like](#) me, because I do not let the law control me. I became [like](#) you non-Jews when I became free from the law, so you too should free yourselves from the gods. When I first went to you, [you did](#) not [harm](#) me at all, but now you are making me worry about you very much.

## Galatians 4:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- you know
- of the flesh
- I proclaimed the gospel

### Translation Words - UST

- You remember
- I told...the good news
- flesh

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Now you know that because of a weakness of the flesh I proclaimed the gospel to you the first time.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> You remember that the first time I told you the good news, I did it because I was sick.

## Galatians 4:14

### And...your trial in my flesh (ULT)

This could mean: (1) they endured the difficulty of welcoming Paul when he was sick (2) they resisted the temptation to reject Paul when he was sick.

### you did not despise (ULT)

Alternate translation: "you did not scorn" or "you did not hate"

### Translation Words - ULT

- trial
- flesh
- reject me
- you welcomed
- as
- as (2)
- an angel
- of God
- Christ Jesus
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- because I was sick
- you did...reject me
- you welcomed
- like you would welcome
- like you would welcome (2)
- an angel
- that came from God
- the Messiah Jesus
- the Messiah
- trial, proving

### ULT

**14** And you did not despise your **trial** in my **flesh** nor **reject me**, but **you welcomed me as an angel of God, as Christ Jesus**.

### UST

**14** Although you might have despised me **because I was sick, you did not reject me**. Instead, **you welcomed me like you would welcome an angel that came from God**. You welcomed me **like you would welcome the Messiah Jesus himself!**

## Galatians 4:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- is...blessing
- I testify

### Translation Words - UST

- you are no longer happy
- I know for certain

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Where, then, {is} your blessing? For I testify to you that, if possible, having torn out your eyes, you would have given {them} to me.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> But now you are no longer happy! I know for certain that you would have done anything to help me. You would have torn out your own eyes and given them to me, if that would have helped me!

## Galatians 4:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- speaking truth
- enemy

### Translation Words - UST

- enemy
- I have continued to tell the truth

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> So then, **speaking truth** to you, have I become your **enemy**?

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> That is why I have become so sad now. You seem to think that I have become your **enemy** because **I have continued to tell the truth** about the Messiah to you.

## Galatians 4:17

**for you...but...to separate (ULT)**

**you...but...to keep...away (UST)**

Alternate translation: "to shut you out from us" or "to make you stop being loyal to us"

**you would be zealous for them (ULT)**

Alternate translation: "you would be devoted to them" or "you would be attached to them".

### Translation Words - ULT

- They are zealous
- you would be zealous
- rightly

### Translation Words - UST

- are trying to get...to follow them
- zeal, zealous
- for your good

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> They are zealous for you, not rightly, but they desire to separate you, so that you would be zealous for them.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Those who are insisting on obeying the Jewish laws are trying to get you to follow them, but they are not doing it for your good. They want to keep you away from me, because they want you to follow them, not me.



## Galatians 4:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- it is...good
- good
- to be zealous

### Translation Words - UST

- good
- the right things
- to insist on doing

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now {it is} always **good to be zealous** for **good**, and not only when I am present with you.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> Well, it is **good to insist on doing the right things**; you should do this always, and not only when I am with you. But make sure it is the right people who are teaching you what to do!

## Galatians 4:19

### My little children (ULT) my children (UST)

This is a metaphor and points to the fact that it was through Paul that the Galatians had become Christians. Alternate translation: "You who are disciples because of me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### with whom...I am in labor...until Christ would be formed in you (ULT)

Paul uses childbirth as a metaphor for his concern about the Galatians. Alternate translation: "I am in pain as though I were a woman giving birth to you, and I will continue to be in pain until Christ truly controls you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [little children](#)
- [I am in labor](#)
- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [children](#)
- [I am very worried](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> My [little children](#), with whom I am in [labor](#) again until [Christ](#) would be formed in you—

### UST

<sup>19</sup> You who are like my [children](#), once again I am [very worried](#) about you, and I will continue to be worried until you become like [the Messiah](#).

## Galatians 4:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tone](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [talk more gently](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> but I am desiring to be present with you now and to change my [tone](#), because I am perplexed about you.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> But I do wish that I could be with you now and that I might [talk more gently](#) with you, because right now I do not know what to do about you.

## Galatians 4:21

### Tell me (ULT)

Alternate translation: "I want to ask a question" or "I want to tell you something".

### do you not listen to the law (ULT)

Paul is introducing what he will say next. Alternate translation: "you need to learn what the law really says." or "let me tell you what the law really says." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [to the law](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all the law of God](#)
- [law](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Tell me, you desiring to be under [law](#), do you not listen [to the law](#)?

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Let me try to explain this again. Some of you desire to obey [all the law of God](#), but do you really pay attention to what the [law](#) says?

## Galatians 4:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- it is written
- Abraham
- sons
- slave girl
- free woman

### Translation Words - UST

- In the law we read
- Abraham
- sons
- His female slave, Hagar
- his wife Sarah, who was not a slave

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> For it is written that Abraham had two sons, one by the slave girl and one by the free woman.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> In the law we read that Abraham became the father of two sons. His female slave, Hagar, bore one son, and his wife Sarah, who was not a slave, bore the other.

## Galatians 4:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- slave girl
- flesh
- free woman
- promise

### Translation Words - UST

- Hagar, the female slave
- naturally
- Sarah, who was not a slave
- miraculously because God had promised

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> And the one was born from the **slave girl** according to **flesh**, but the {other}, from the **free woman**, through **promise**.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Ishmael, the son born by **Hagar, the female slave**, was conceived **naturally**. But Isaac, the son born by **Sarah, who was not a slave**, was conceived **miraculously because God had promised** Abraham that he would have a son.

## Galatians 4:24

### being spoken as an allegory (ULT) symbolize (UST)

An **allegory** is a historical event that represents something else. In Paul's allegory, the two women referred to in [Galatians 4:22](#) represent two different covenants.

### Mount Sinai (ULT) Mount Sinai (UST)

**Mount Sinai** is a synecdoche for the law that Moses gave to the Israelites there. Alternate translation: "Mount Sinai, where Moses gave the law to Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### giving birth...slavery (ULT) to live...a slave (UST)

Paul treats the law as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "The people under this covenant are like slaves who have to obey the law" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenants](#)
- [Mount Sinai](#)
- [slavery](#)
- [Hagar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenants](#)
- [Mount Sinai](#)
- [a slave](#)
- [Hagar](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> These are being spoken as an allegory, for they are two [covenants](#). One {is} from [Mount Sinai](#), giving birth to [slavery](#); this is [Hagar](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Now these two women symbolize two [covenants](#). God made the first covenant with the people of Israel at [Mount Sinai](#). That covenant requires the Israelites to live like [a slave](#) to the law. So [Hagar](#), the female slave, symbolizes this covenant.

## Galatians 4:25

### corresponding to (ULT) symbolizes (UST)

Alternate translation: “represents” or “is similar”.

### she is in slavery...with her children (ULT)

Hagar is a slave and her children are slaves with her. Alternate translation: “Jerusalem, like Hagar, is a slave, and her children are slaves with her” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hagar](#)
- [Mount Sinai](#)
- [Arabia](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [she is in slavery](#)
- [children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Hagar](#)
- [Mount Sinai](#)
- [Arabia](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem is like a slave](#)
- [children](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Now [Hagar](#) is [Mount Sinai](#) in [Arabia](#), and corresponding to the present [Jerusalem](#), for [she is in slavery](#) with her [children](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> So [Hagar](#) symbolizes [Mount Sinai](#), in the land of [Arabia](#). But Hagar also symbolizes the city of [Jerusalem](#) as it is today. This is because [Jerusalem is like a slave](#) mother: She and all her [children](#)—that is, her people—are like slaves, because they all must obey the law that God gave to Israel at Mount Sinai.



## Galatians 4:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- free

### Translation Words - UST

- a new Jerusalem
- free

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But the Jerusalem above is free, which is our mother.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> But there is a new Jerusalem in heaven, and that city is like a mother of all us who believe in the Messiah, and that city is free!

## Galatians 4:27

### Rejoice (ULT) you must rejoice (UST)

Alternate translation: "Be happy".

#### Translation Words - ULT

- it is written
- you barren
- suffering the pains of childbirth
- children

#### Translation Words - UST

- the prophet Isaiah wrote
- you have no children
- you have...children
- children

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For *it is written*, "Rejoice, you barren not giving birth; break forth and shout, you not *suffering the pains of childbirth*; because the *children* of the desolate one {are} more than {those} of the one having a husband."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> That new Jerusalem will have many more people than the old Jerusalem. This is because *the prophet Isaiah wrote*, "You who live in Jerusalem, you must rejoice! Now *you have no children*, like a woman who cannot have children! But one day you will shout with joy even though *you have no children* now. Like a woman who cannot give birth to children, and you feel deserted. You will have more *children* than any woman with a husband could have borne."

## Galatians 4:28

### brothers (ULT) my fellow believers (UST)

See how you translated this word in [Galatians 1:2](#).

### children of promise (ULT) children of God because you believed in what God promised (UST)

Here, **children of promise** could refer to: (1) Abraham's children (2) God's children.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [children](#)
- [of promise](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [my fellow believers](#)
- [children](#)
- [God promised](#)
- [Isaac](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Now you, [brothers](#), like [Isaac](#), are [children of promise](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Now, [my fellow believers](#), you have become [children](#) of God because you believed in what [God promised](#) to give to us. You are like [Isaac](#), who was born because Abraham had believed in what God promised to give to him.

## Galatians 4:29

### according to flesh (ULT) naturally (UST)

This refers to how Abraham became Ishmael's father by taking Hagar as a wife. Alternate translation: "by means of human action" or "the natural way" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### according to...Spirit (ULT) naturally...the Holy Spirit (UST)

Here, **according to Spirit** means Isaac was born in a supernatural way, through the power of the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "because of the Spirit" or "because of the work of the Spirit"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [just as](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [was persecuting](#)
- [Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [long ago](#)
- [naturally](#)
- [caused trouble for](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But [just as](#) then, the one having been born according to [flesh was persecuting](#) the one according to [Spirit](#), so {it} also {is} now.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> But [long ago](#) Abraham's son Ishmael, who was born [naturally](#), [caused trouble for](#) Abraham's son Isaac, who was born because [the Holy Spirit](#) made it happen. It is the same way now. The people who are slaves to God's law persecute those of us who trust in what the Messiah has promised to give us.

## Galatians 4:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- scripture
- Throw out
- slave girl
- of the slave girl
- son
- son
- son
- will...inherit
- of the free woman

### Translation Words - UST

- scriptures
- female slave
- slave boy
- son
- slave boy
- son
- will inherit
- send away from this place
- free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> But what does the **scripture** say?

“**Throw out** the **slave girl** and her **son**.

For the **son of the slave girl** will certainly not **inherit** with the **son of the free woman**.”

### UST

<sup>30</sup> But these are the words in the

**scriptures**: “The son of the woman who was not a slave will inherit what his father owns. The **slave boy will inherit** nothing. So **send away from this place** the **female slave** and her **son!**”

## Galatians 4:31

### brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers (UST)

See how you translated this in [Galatians 1:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- children
- of a slave girl
- of the free woman

### Translation Words - UST

- My fellow believers
- children
- who have a slave woman as our mother
- a woman who was free

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Therefore, [brothers](#), we are not [children of a slave girl](#), but [of the free woman](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [My fellow believers](#), we are not [children who have a slave woman as our mother](#), but we are the children who are born from [a woman who was free](#), and so are we are free too!

## Galatians 5

### Galatians 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Paul continues writing about the law of Moses as something that traps or enslaves a person. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Fruit of the Spirit

The phrase “the fruit of the Spirit” is not plural, even though it begins a list of several things. Translators should keep the singular form if possible. (See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Illustrations

Paul uses several metaphors in this chapter to illustrate his points and help explain complicated issues. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### **“You are cut off from Christ, you who would be justified by the law; you no longer experience grace.”**

Some scholars think Paul teaches that being circumcised causes a person to lose their salvation. Other scholars think Paul means that obeying the law to try to get right with God will keep a person from being saved by grace. (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#))

## Galatians 5:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul applies the allegory of the two women to remind believers that they are free from having to obey the law.

### **For freedom Christ set us free (ULT) The Messiah set us free from the law so that it may control us no longer (UST)**

**For freedom Christ set us free** implies that Christ sets believers free from the law and that they are not obligated to obey it. Alternate translation: “Christ has set us free from the old covenant so that we might be free” or “Christ has set us free from the law so that we might live as free people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### **Stand firm (ULT) stop anyone (UST)**

**Stand firm** figuratively refers to staying strongly resolute for a certain task. Here, it is implied that the Galatian believers are continue to be determined to live a life free from the law. Alternate translation: “Do not give in to the arguments of people who teach something else” or “Be determined to stay free” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **do not again be subjected to a yoke of slavery (ULT) do not let the law control you like slaves again (UST)**

Here, **do not again be subjected to a yoke of slavery** figuratively refers to being obligated to obey the law. Alternate translation: “do not live like one who is controlled like being under a yoke of slavery to the law” or “do not go back again to being a slave of the law” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [For freedom](#)
- [set...free](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [a yoke](#)
- [of slavery](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The Messiah](#)
- [so that it may control us no longer](#)
- [set...free](#)
- [control you](#)
- [like slaves](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [For freedom Christ set us free](#). Stand firm, therefore, and do not again be subjected to [a yoke of slavery](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [The Messiah set us free](#) from the law [so that it may control us no longer](#). So stop anyone who says you are still slaves to the law, and do not let the law [control you like slaves](#) again.



## Galatians 5:2

**if you would be circumcised (ULT)**

**If you let anyone circumcise you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "if you let someone circumcise you" or "if you receive circumcision"

**Christ will benefit you nothing (ULT)**  
**the Messiah has done for you will not help you at all (UST)**

Paul means that if a person is circumcised in order to receive salvation, then all that Christ has done for them is for nothing. No one can be justified by faith in Christ and at the same time by their own efforts.

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Behold, I, [Paul](#), say to you that if [you would be circumcised](#), [Christ will benefit you nothing](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Consider very carefully what I, [Paul](#), an apostle, now tell you. If [you let anyone circumcise you](#), what [the Messiah](#) has done for you [will not help you at all!](#)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [you would be circumcised](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [will benefit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [you let anyone circumcise you](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [will not help...at all](#)

## Galatians 5:3

### Now I testify (ULT)

Alternate translation: "I declare" or "I serve as a witness" or "I tell you" or "I warn you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- I testify
- being circumcised
- law

### Translation Words - UST

- I solemnly declare
- whom they have circumcised
- law

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now I testify again to every man being circumcised that he is obligated to do the whole law.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Once again I solemnly declare to every man whom they have circumcised, that he must obey the law perfectly, for God to declare him good in his sight.

## Galatians 5:4

**You were cut off from Christ (ULT)  
you have separated yourself from the Messiah  
(UST)**

Here **cut off** is a metaphor for separation from Christ. Alternate translation: “You have ended your relationship with Christ” or “You are no longer united with Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**whoever is being justified by law (ULT)  
you expect God to declare you good in his  
sight because you try to keep the law (UST)**

The phrase **being justified by the law** describes the attempt or pursuit to be justified by the law. Alternate translation: “all of you who think you can be justified by doing the deeds required by the law” or “you who want to be justified by the law”

**you fell from grace (ULT)  
God will no longer act kindly toward you (UST)**

Alternate translation: “you have turned your back on the grace of God” or “God will not be gracious to you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [is being justified](#)
- [law](#)
- [grace](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [expect God to declare you good in his sight](#)
- [because you try to keep the law](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [God will no longer act kindly toward you](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You were cut off from [Christ](#), whoever [is being justified by law](#); you fell from [grace](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> If you [expect God to declare you good in his sight because you try to keep the law](#), you have separated yourself from [the Messiah](#); [God will no longer act kindly toward you](#).

## Galatians 5:5

### General Information:

Here, **we** refers to Paul and those who do not trust in the law, but in the Messiah. And exclusive form of “we” fits the context better in this case. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### through {the} Spirit (ULT) God’s Spirit (UST)

Alternate translation: “by the power of the Spirit” or “by the help of the Spirit”

### we...by faith...eagerly wait for {the} hope of righteousness (ULT)

### We...to trust in the Messiah are confidently waiting for the time when God will declare us good in His sight (UST)

This could mean: (1) “we are waiting by faith for the hope of righteousness” (2) “we are waiting for the hope of righteousness that comes by faith”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [through {the} Spirit](#)
- [faith](#)
- [the} hope](#)
- [of righteousness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God’s Spirit](#)
- [to trust in the Messiah](#)
- [confidently](#)
- [when God will declare us good in His sight](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For [through {the} Spirit](#), by [faith](#), we eagerly wait for [{the} hope of righteousness](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> We whom [God’s Spirit](#) enables to [trust in the Messiah](#) are [confidently](#) waiting for the time [when God will declare us good in His sight](#).

## Galatians 5:6

### neither circumcision...nor uncircumcision (ULT)

The words **circumcision** and **uncircumcision** refer to being a Jew or a non-Jew. Alternate translation: “neither being a Jew nor not being a Jew” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### is capable of anything (ULT)

Alternate translation: “makes no difference” or “is meaningless”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [uncircumcision](#)
- [is capable of](#)
- [faith](#)
- [love](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [circumcised](#)
- [not circumcised](#)
- [trust in the Messiah](#)
- [we love others](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For in [Christ Jesus](#) neither [circumcision](#) nor [uncircumcision is capable of](#) anything, but {only} [faith](#) working through [love](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> God is not concerned whether we are [circumcised](#) or [not circumcised](#). Instead, God is concerned about whether we [trust in the Messiah](#), with the result that [we love others](#) because we trust in him.

## Galatians 5:7

### You were running (ULT)

### You were following the Messiah (UST)

Paul uses the metaphor of **running** to describe the spiritual progress the Galatian believers were making. Alternate translation: "You were making excellent progress" or "you were doing so well" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You were running](#)
- [by truth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You were following the Messiah](#)
- [his true message](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [You were running](#) well. Who hindered you, not to be persuaded [by truth](#)?

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [You were following the Messiah](#) so well! Who stopped you from obeying [his true message](#)?

## Galatians 5:8

### persuasion (ULT)

### who is persuading you to think like this (UST)

Here, **persuasion** refers to the idea of getting a person to change what they believe and act differently. Alternate translation: "This teaching which persuaded you to stop trusting in the Messiah" or "This way of thinking"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [calling](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who chose](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> {This} persuasion {is} not from the one [calling](#) you!

### UST

<sup>8</sup> God, the one [who chose](#) you, is not the one who is persuading you to think like this!

## Galatians 5:9

### A little leaven (ULT)

### a little yeast (UST)

A **little leaven** describes the teaching of circumcision, which threaten to ruin the entire lives of the Galatian believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- A...leaven
- leavens

### Translation Words - UST

- yeast
- to swell up

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> A little **leaven leavens** the whole lump.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> This false teaching that someone is teaching you is in danger of spreading to all of you, just like a little **yeast** in the dough causes it all **to swell up**.



## Galatians 5:10

**you will think nothing otherwise (ULT)  
will keep you from believing in anything else (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you will not believe anything different from what I am telling you" or "you will not think differently than what I believe"

**you...troubling (ULT)**

Alternate translation: "is causing you to be uncertain about the truth" or "stirs up trouble among you"

**whoever he may be (ULT)**

**whoever he is (UST)**

This could mean: (1) Paul does not know the names of the people who are telling the Galatians that they need to obey the law of Moses (2) Paul does not want the Galatians to care about whether they are important or influential.

### Translation Words - ULT

- am confident
- in {the} Lord
- the} Lord
- troubling
- will bear
- judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- am certain
- the Lord
- God will certainly punish
- God will certainly punish
- who is confusing...by teaching this false message
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> I am confident in you in {the} Lord that you will think nothing otherwise. But the one troubling you will bear the judgment, whoever he may be.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> I am certain that the Lord Jesus will keep you from believing in anything else except his true good news. God will certainly punish anyone who is confusing you by teaching this false message, whoever he is.



## **Galatians 5:11**

## But brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted (ULT)

Paul is describing a situation that does not exist to emphasize the fact that people are persecuting him. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**brothers (ULT)**

**my fellow believers (UST)**

See how you translated this in [Galatians 1:2](#), [Galatians 3:15](#), [Galatians 4:12](#).

## the stumbling block of the cross has been removed (ULT)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the teaching about the cross has no stumbling block” or “there is nothing in the teaching of the cross that would cause people to stumble” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## the stumbling block of the cross has been removed (ULT)

Stumbling represents sinning, and a stumbling block represents something that causes people to sin. In this case the sin is to reject the truth of the teaching that in order to be made right with God, people only need to believe that Jesus died on the cross for us. Alternate translation: “the teaching about the cross that causes people to reject the truth has been removed” or “there is nothing in the teaching about Jesus dying on the cross that would lead people to reject the teaching” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [proclaim](#)
- [circumcision](#)
- [am I...being persecuted](#)
- [stumbling block](#)
- [of the cross](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [my fellow believers](#)
- [I...teach that](#)
- [you must let them circumcise you](#)
- [persecuting me](#)
- [cross](#)
- [stumbling block, stone of stumbling](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But [brothers](#), if I still [proclaim circumcision](#), why [am I still being persecuted](#)? In that case the [stumbling block of the cross](#) has been removed.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> But, [my fellow believers](#), maybe someone is saying that I still [teach that you must let them circumcise you](#). I certainly taught that before I followed the Messiah, but I am not teaching that any longer. But what they are saying cannot be true; otherwise, no one would be [persecuting me](#) now. No, I tell you that if people think they have to be circumcised to follow the Messiah, then the fact that the Messiah died on the cross no longer make any difference to them.

## Galatians 5:12

**will...castrate themselves (ULT)**  
**would go all the way and castrate themselves (UST)**

This could be: (1) literal, to cut off their male organs so as to become eunuchs (2) metaphorical, completely withdraw from the Christian community. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I wish the ones disturbing you will even castrate themselves!

### UST

<sup>12</sup> I wish that those who are confusing you would go all the way and castrate themselves!

## Galatians 5:13

### For (ULT)

Paul is giving the reason for his words in [Galatians 5:12](#).

**you...have been called to freedom (ULT)**  
**you...God has called...to set you free (UST)**

It is implied that Christ has set believers free from the old covenant. Here freedom from the old covenant is a metaphor for not being obligated to obey it. Alternate translation: "You were called to freedom from the old covenant" or "Christ has chosen you to not be obligated to the old covenant" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers (UST)

See how you translated this in [Galatians 1:2](#).

**an opportunity for the flesh (ULT)**  
**so you could sin (UST)**

The word *flesh*\* refers to the part of human nature that does not submit to God. This word sums up the impelling motive of the natural man, and is the moral bias of the man who is not ruled by the Holy Spirit. The relationship between **opportunity** and **the flesh** can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "an opportunity for you to behave according to your sinful nature" or "an opportunity to follow the evil desires of your hearts" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [have been called](#)
- [freedom](#)
- [freedom](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [for the flesh](#)
- [love](#)
- [serve](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [My fellow believers](#)
- [God has called](#)
- [to set you free](#)
- [do not think he set you free](#)
- [so you could sin](#)
- [love](#)
- [serve](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For you [have been called](#) to [freedom](#), [brothers](#), only not the [freedom](#) for an opportunity [for the flesh](#); rather, through [love](#) [serve](#) one another.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [My fellow believers](#), [God has called](#) you [to set you free](#). But [do not think he set you free so you could sin](#). Instead, [love](#) and [serve](#) each other, because you are now free to do that!

## Galatians 5:14

### the...all...law has been fulfilled in one command (ULT)

This could mean: (1) "you can state the whole law in just one commandment" (2) "by obeying one commandment, you obey all the commandments"

### Love your neighbor as yourself (ULT)

The words **your** and **yourself** are singular. (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- has been fulfilled
- Love
- neighbor
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- law
- Love
- like you love
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For all the law has been fulfilled in one command, in {this}, "Love your neighbor as yourself."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Remember something that Jesus said. He said all the law means this: "Love each person like you love yourself."

## Galatians 5:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [devouring](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [harm](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But if you are biting and [devouring](#) one another, watch out {that} you might not be consumed by one another.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> So if you attack and [harm](#) each other like wild animals, you might completely destroy each other.



## Galatians 5:16

### walk by {the} Spirit (ULT)

Here, **walk** is a metaphor for living. Alternate translation: “conduct your life in the power of the Holy Spirit” or “live your life in dependence on the Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### you would certainly not fulfill desires of {the} flesh (ULT)

### you will not do the sinful things you might want to do (UST)

The phrase **you would certainly not fulfill the desires of the flesh** is an idiom that means “to do what someone desires.” Alternate translation: “You will not do what your sinful nature desires” (See: [Idiom](#))

### desires of {the} flesh (ULT)

### the sinful things you might want to do (UST)

The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person and wanted to sin. Alternate translation: “what you want to do because of your sinful nature” or “the things you want to do because you are sinful” (See: [Personification](#)). See how you translated this **flesh** in [Galatians 5:13].

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk
- by {the} Spirit
- desires
- of {the} flesh

### Translation Words - UST

- God’s Spirit
- the sinful things you might want to do
- the sinful things you might want to do
- walk, walked

### ULT

**16** Now I say, **walk by {the} Spirit** and you would certainly not fulfill **desires of {the} flesh**.

### UST

**16** So I tell you this: Always let **God’s Spirit** lead you. If you do that, you will not do **the sinful things you might want to do**.

## Galatians 5:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- flesh
- Spirit
- Spirit

### Translation Words - UST

- Spirit
- Spirit
- flesh
- desire to sin

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For the **flesh** desires against the **Spirit**, and the **Spirit** against the **flesh**. For these oppose each other, so that you are not doing these {things} that you would desire.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When you want to sin, you go against God's **Spirit**. And God's **Spirit** goes against your **desire to sin**. These two are always fighting against each other. The result is that you do not always do the good things that you truly desire to do.

## Galatians 5:18

**you are not under {the} law (ULT)  
the law does not control you (UST)**

Alternate translation: "you are not obligated to obey the law of Moses"

### Translation Words - ULT

- by {the} Spirit
- the} law

### Translation Words - UST

- God's Spirit
- the law

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But if you are led by {the} Spirit, you are not under {the} law.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> But when God's Spirit leads you, the law does not control you.

## Galatians 5:19

### the works of the flesh (ULT) what is sinful (UST)

The word **flesh** is used as if it were a person. The abstract noun **works** can be translated with the verb “does.” Alternate translation: “what the sinful nature does” or “the deeds if we follow the sinful desires of our hearts” or “what people do because of their sinful nature.” See how you translated **flesh** in [Galatians 5:13] and [Galatians 5:16].

#### Translation Words - ULT

- works
- of the flesh
- sexual immorality

#### Translation Words - UST

- is sinful
- is sinful
- sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Now the **works of the flesh** are evident, which are: **sexual immorality**, impurity, depravity,

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> It is easy to recognize what **is sinful**. Sinful people commit evil sexual actions, sexual actions that even go against what is natural, and they desire things that are against good laws.

## Galatians 5:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- idolatry
- sorcery
- strife
- rivalry
- jealousy

### Translation Words - UST

- They also worship false gods and things that represent those gods
- They try to get evil spirits to act for them
- People quarrel with each other
- strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict
- People are jealous

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> idolatry, sorcery, hostilities, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, divisions,

### UST

<sup>20</sup> They also worship false gods and things that represent those gods. They try to get evil spirits to act for them. People are hostile to others. People quarrel with each other. People are jealous. People behave angrily. People try to get others to think highly of them and do not consider what others want. People do not associate with others. People associate only with those who agree with them.

## Galatians 5:21

### will...inherit (ULT)

### will...receive (UST)

The word **inherit** figuratively refers to how believers will receive what God has promised believers like someone who inherits property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [envy](#)
- [drunkenness](#)
- [like](#)
- [just as](#)
- [such things](#)
- [will...inherit](#)
- [the} kingdom of God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [People want what others have](#)
- [People get drunk](#)
- [they do other things](#)
- [just like](#)
- [like this](#)
- [will...receive](#)
- [God has for his own people when he reveals himself to everyone as king](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [envy](#), [drunkenness](#), carousing, and {things} [like](#) these, about which I warn you, [just as](#) I warned you before, that the ones practicing [such things](#) will not [inherit](#) {the} kingdom of God.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [People want what others have](#). [People get drunk](#). People get drunk and riot. And [they do other things](#) like these. I warn you now, [just like](#) I warned you previously, that the ones who constantly act and think [like this](#) will not [receive](#) what [God has for his own people when he reveals himself to everyone as king](#).

## Galatians 5:22

### But the fruit of the Spirit (ULT)

Here, **fruit** is a metaphor for “result” or “outcome.” Alternate translation: “But what the Spirit produces” or “But the Spirit makes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fruit](#)
- [of the Spirit](#)
- [love](#)
- [joy](#)
- [peace](#)
- [patience](#)
- [goodness](#)
- [faithfulness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God’s Spirit](#)
- [starts causing us](#)
- [to love others](#)
- [We are joyful](#)
- [We are peaceful](#)
- [We are patient](#)
- [We are good](#)
- [We are ones whom others can trust](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But the [fruit of the Spirit](#) is [love, joy, peace, patience](#), kindness, [goodness, faithfulness](#),

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But as we grow in trusting the Messiah, [God’s Spirit starts causing us to love others. We are joyful. We are peaceful. We are patient. We are kind. We are good. We are ones whom others can trust.](#)

## Galatians 5:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- and} self-control
- law

### Translation Words - UST

- We control our behavior
- law

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> gentleness, {and} self-control; against such {things} there is no law.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> We are gentle. We control our behavior. There is no law that says people should not think and act in such ways.



## Galatians 5:24

### have crucified the flesh with the passions and the desires (ULT)

Paul speaks of Christians who refuse to live according to their sinful nature as if it were a person and they have killed it on a cross.

Alternate translation: "refuse to live according the sinful nature with its passions and desires, as if they killed it on a cross." See how you translated **flesh** in [Galatians 5:13], [Galatians 5:16], and [Galatians 5:19]. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Christ...Jesus](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [have crucified](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [desires](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Messiah Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [we had nailed them to a cross and killed](#)
- [evil things](#)
- [lust, lustful, passions, desires](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But the ones [of Christ Jesus have crucified](#) the [flesh](#) with the passions and the [desires](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Furthermore, we who belong to [the Messiah Jesus](#) have stopped allowing ourselves to do the evil things that we did in the past. It is as though [we had nailed them to a cross and killed](#) these [evil things!](#)

## Galatians 5:25

### If we live by {the} Spirit (ULT)

Alternate translation: "Since God's Spirit has caused us to be alive"

### let us also walk by {the} Spirit (ULT)

Here, **walk** is a metaphor for how a person lives. Alternate translation: "then we should allow the Holy Spirit to guide how we live" or "let us follow the Holy Spirit in every part of our lives" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we live](#)
- [by {the} Spirit](#)
- [by {the} Spirit \(2\)](#)
- [let us...walk](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [the Spirit \(2\)](#)
- [has enabled us to live](#)
- [we should behave](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> If [we live by {the} Spirit](#), let us also walk by {the} Spirit.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Since [God's Spirit has enabled us to live](#) in a new way, [we should behave](#) as [the Spirit](#) leads us.

## Galatians 5:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- boastful
- envying

### Translation Words - UST

- proud about ourselves
- We should not envy

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Let us not become boastful, provoking one another, envying one another.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> We should not be proud about ourselves. We should not make each other angry. We should not envy each other.

## Galatians 6

### Galatians 6 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes Paul's letter. His final words address some issues that do not seem to be connected to the rest of his letter.

### Brothers

Paul writes the words in this chapter to Christians. He calls them "brothers." This refers to Paul's Christian brothers and not his Jewish brothers.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### New Creation

People who are born again are a new creation in Christ. Christians have been given new life in Christ. They have a new nature in them after they come to faith in Christ. To Paul, this is more significant than a person's ancestry. (See: [born again](#), [born of God](#), [new birth](#) and [faith](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Flesh

This is a complex issue. "Flesh" is contrasted with "spirit." In this chapter, flesh is also used to refer to the physical body. (See: [flesh](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#))



## **Galatians 6:1**

**Connecting Statement:**

Paul teaches believers how they should treat other believers and how God rewards someone who is faithful.

**Brothers (ULT)****My fellow believers (UST)**

See how you translated **brothers** in [Galatians 1:2](#), [Galatians 3:15](#), [Galatians 4:12](#), and [Galatians 5:11](#).

**if...a man (ULT)****if...a brother or sister (UST)**

Alternate translation: "if anyone among you" or "if one of you"

**even if a man is caught in any trespass (ULT)**

This could mean: (1) a fellow believers catches the person committing a sin. Alternate translation: "if someone is discovered in an act of sin" (2) a sin overcomes a person so that they sin. Alternate translation: "if someone among you sins" or "if someone is led astray to sin"

**you, the spiritual (ULT)****those of you whom God's Spirit is directing (UST)**

Alternate translation: "those of you who are guided by the Spirit" or "you who submit to the Spirit"

**let...restore such a one (ULT)****should...correct that person (UST)**

Alternate translation: "exhort the person who sinned to return to a correct relationship with God" or "you should humbly help bring that person to the right path"

**in a spirit of gentleness (ULT)****gently (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the person's attitude and disposition. Alternate translation: "with an attitude of gentleness" or "in a kind way" (2) the Holy Spirit who is characterized by gentleness is directing the one offering correction. Alternate translation: "through the Holy Spirit of gentleness" or "by following the Holy Spirit who is gentle"

**considering yourself (ULT)****be very careful (UST)**

These words treat the Galatians as though they are all one person to emphasize that he is talking to each of them. Alternate translation: "Be concerned about yourselves" or "I say to each one of you, 'Be careful for yourself'" (See: [Forms of 'You' — Singular](#) )

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> **Brothers**, even if a man is caught in any **trespass**, let you, the **spiritual**, **restore** such a one in a **spirit** of gentleness, considering yourself, lest you also **be tempted**.

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> **My fellow believers**, if you discover that a brother or sister **is doing wrong**, those of you **whom God's Spirit is directing** should **gently** correct that person. Furthermore, as you correct another person, you should be very careful so that you do not **sin** either.

## **lest you also be tempted (ULT) you do not sin either (UST)**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so that you are tempted and also sin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- Brothers
- trespass
- spiritual
- a spirit
- let...restore
- be tempted

### **Translation Words - UST**

- My fellow believers
- is doing wrong
- whom God's Spirit is directing
- gently
- should
- do...sin



## Galatians 6:2

### you will fulfill the law of Christ (ULT) you will do what the Messiah commands (UST)

Here, **the law of Christ** does not refer to a set of rules, but most likely to the Messiah's command to love one another in [John 13:34](#). It involves submission to the person of Jesus and not to a code or list of commandments. This is similar to Paul's statement that the law can be summarized by loving one another in [[Galatians 5:14](#)].

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Carry
- burdens
- you will fulfill
- law
- of Christ

#### Translation Words - UST

- problems
- you should help
- you will do what
- Messiah
- commands

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Carry one the burdens of another, and thus you will fulfill the law of Christ.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> When there are brothers or sisters who have problems, you should help each other. By doing that, you will do what the Messiah commands.

## Galatians 6:3

### For if (ULT)

**For** could be connected to: (1) **carry one another's burdens** (Galatians 6:2) (2) **lest you also might be tempted** (Galatians 6:1) (3) *Let us not become conceited\** (Galatians 5:26).

### to be something (ULT) more highly of themselves (UST)

Alternate translation: "he is better than others"

### being nothing (ULT) than they should (UST)

Alternate translation: "he is not better than others"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he deceives](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [merely fool](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For if anyone thinks {himself} to be something, being nothing, [he deceives](#) himself.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> I say this because people who think more highly of themselves than they should [merely fool](#) themselves.

## Galatians 6:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- work
- reason to boast

### Translation Words - UST

- are doing
- You can be proud

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But let each one examine {his} own **work**, and then he will have **reason to boast** in himself alone and not in someone else.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Instead, each of you should constantly test and decide if you can approve what you yourself **are doing** and thinking. **You can be proud** because what you yourself have done is good, and not because what you have done is better than what anyone else has done.

## Galatians 6:5

### will carry {his} own burden (ULT)

The could mean: (1) each person has their own responsibilities and tasks. Alternate translation: "each person must do the work that God has given him" or "each person is responsible for only his work" (2) each person is responsible for their own weaknesses and sins. Alternate translation: "each person is responsible for their own weaknesses"

### Translation Words - ULT

- will carry
- burden

### Translation Words - UST

- you must...perform
- tasks

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For each one will carry {his} own burden.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> I say this because you must each perform your own individual tasks.

## Galatians 6:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- being taught
- teaching
- word
- good {things}

### Translation Words - UST

- fellow believers teach you
- them
- truth about God
- your possessions

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But let the one being taught the word share in all good {things} with the one teaching.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> If fellow believers teach you the truth about God, then you should share your possessions with them.

## Galatians 6:7

### for whatever a man may sow, that he will also reap (ULT)

Here, **sow** represents doing things that end in some kind of result, and **reap** represents experiencing the results of what one has done. Alternate translation: “for just as a farmer gathers in the fruit of whatever kind of seeds he plants, so everyone experiences the results of whatever he does” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for whatever a man may sow (ULT)

Alternate translation: “whatever a person plants” or “whatever someone plants” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Do...be deceived
- God
- is...mocked
- may sow
- he will...reap

### Translation Words - UST

- You should...deceive yourselves
- one can deceive
- God
- will harvest
- he plants

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Do not **be deceived**. God is not **mocked**, for whatever a man **may sow**, that **he will** also **reap**.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> **You should** not **deceive yourselves**. Remember that no **one can deceive God**. Just like a farmer **will harvest** exactly the kind of crop that **he plants**, God will pay back people according to what they have done.



## **Galatians 6:8**



## the one sowing to {his} own flesh (ULT) those who commit the sins that they wish to (UST)

Here, **sowing** is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, **sowing to his own flesh** refers to a person doing sinful actions because of his sinful nature. Alternate translation: “the person who continually does deeds following the evil desires of their heart” or “the person who does the things he wants to do because of his sinful nature” or “the person who does what pleases his sinful self” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## will reap destruction (ULT) God will punish eternally (UST)

Here, **destruction** refers to God punishing the person as if the person were harvesting a crop. Alternate translation: “will receive punishment for what he did” or “he will harvest death” or “he will harvest punishment that is forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## But the one sowing to the Spirit (ULT)

Here, **sowing** is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, **sowing to the Spirit** refers to a person who does good actions because he is obeying and following God’s Spirit. Alternate translation: “the person who does the things God’s Spirit loves” or “the person who lives to please the Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

## from...will reap...the Spirit...eternal life (ULT)

Here, **eternal life** refers to God rewarding the person as if the person were harvesting a crop. Alternate translation: “will receive eternal life as a reward from God’s Spirit” or “he will harvest eternal life from the Holy Spirit”

## Translation Words - ULT

- [sowing](#)
- [sowing](#) (2)
- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [will reap](#)
- [will reap](#) (2)
- [Spirit](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [life](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [God will punish eternally](#)
- [will live...with God](#) (2)
- [who commit](#)
- [who please](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For the one [sowing](#) to {his} own [flesh](#), from the [flesh will reap](#) destruction. But the one [sowing](#) to the [Spirit](#), from the [Spirit will reap](#) eternal life.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [God will punish eternally](#) those [who commit the sins that they wish to](#). But those [who please God’s Spirit will live forever with God](#) because of what God’s Spirit does for them.

- the sins that they wish to
- flesh
- God's Spirit
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- will live...with God
- forever

## Galatians 6:9

### for in due time (ULT)

Alternate translation: "for at the proper time" or "when the right time arrives"

### Translation Words - ULT

- good
- in...time
- we will reap

### Translation Words - UST

- pleases God
- eventually
- we will receive a reward

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But we should not become discouraged in doing good, for in due time, not becoming weary, we will reap.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But we should not tire of doing what pleases God, because eventually, at the time that God has determined, we will receive a reward, if we do not stop doing the good things that we have been doing.

## Galatians 6:10

### So then (ULT)

Alternate translation: "As a result of this" or "Because of this"

### the ones of {the} household of the faith (ULT) all our fellow believers (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who are members of God's family through faith in Christ"

### Translation Words - ULT

- as
- time
- good
- of {the} household
- of the faith

### Translation Words - UST

- whenever
- opportunities
- is
- all our fellow believers
- all our fellow believers

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So then, **as** we have **time**, we should do **good** to all, but especially to the ones **of {the} household of the faith**.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So **whenever** we have **opportunities**, we should do what **is** good to all people. But especially we should do what is good to **all our fellow believers**.

## Galatians 6:11

### Connecting Statement:

As Paul closes this letter, he gives one more reminder that the law does not save and that they should remember the cross of Christ.

### with my own hand (ULT) in my own handwriting (UST)

This could mean: (1) Paul had someone write most of this letter as Paul told him what to write, but Paul himself wrote this last part of the letter (2) Paul wrote the whole letter himself.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with...own hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [handwriting](#)

### ULT

**11** See what large letters I wrote to you with my [own hand](#).

### UST

**11** I am now writing this last part of this letter to you in my own [handwriting](#). Notice the large letters with which I am now writing.

## Galatians 6:12

### to make a good impression in {the} flesh (ULT)

Alternate translation: “others will think well of them” or “others will think that they are good people”

### in {the} flesh (ULT)

Here, **in the flesh** refers to their desire to circumcise the Galatian believers. Alternate translation: “outwardly” or “by the way their bodies appear”

### for the cross (ULT) for believing that...died on the cross to save us (UST)

Here, **for the cross** represents what Christ did for us when he died on the cross. Alternate translation: “the work Jesus did on the cross” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the} flesh](#)
- [to be circumcised](#)
- [they might...be persecuted](#)
- [for the cross](#)
- [of Christ...Jesus](#)
- [of Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to circumcise](#)
- [the others will...persecute them](#)
- [for believing that...died on the cross to save us](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> As many as desire to make a good impression in [{the} flesh](#), they compel you [to be circumcised](#), only so that [they might not be persecuted for the cross of Christ Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Some Jewish believers want [to circumcise](#) you so that the other Jews will think highly of them for making converts to Judaism. But they are doing this just so that [the others will not persecute them for believing that the Messiah died on the cross to save us](#).

## Galatians 6:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- circumcised
- to be circumcised
- the} law
- they may boast
- flesh

### Translation Words - UST

- the law of God
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- to circumcise
- they can boast
- they have made more converts to the Jewish faith

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For not even the ones circumcised keep {the} law themselves, but they want you to be circumcised so that they may boast in your flesh.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> The reason that I say this is that not even those people keep the law of God; instead, they want to circumcise you so they can boast that they have made more converts to the Jewish faith.

## Galatians 6:14

### and I to {the} world (ULT)

The words **has been crucified** are understood from the previous phrase. This means that the natural world has stopped having any claims or influence on Paul. Alternate translation: "and I have been crucified to the world" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to boast
- cross
- of...Lord
- Jesus
- Christ
- the} world
- to {the} world
- has been crucified

### Translation Words - UST

- to boast
- Lord
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- dying on the cross
- crucify, crucified
- world, worldly
- world, worldly

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But may it never be to me to boast except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, through which {the} world has been crucified to me, and I to {the} world.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> I myself, however, desire very much never to boast about anything like that. The only thing I will be proud about is our Lord Jesus the Messiah and his dying on the cross. When he died on the cross, he made everything the unbelievers wish for to be nothing in my sight, and he made what I wish for to be nothing in their sight.



## Galatians 6:15

### a new creation (ULT)

### new people (UST)

Here, **a new creation** refers to the whole process of conversion when someone trusts in the Messiah and the Holy Spirit gives that person new life.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcision](#)
- [uncircumcision](#)
- [a...creation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [circumcised](#)
- [not](#)
- [people](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For neither [circumcision](#) is anything, nor [uncircumcision](#), but a new [creation](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> I will be very proud about that, because God does not care whether people are [circumcised](#) or [not](#). Instead, he cares only that he changes them into new [people](#).

## Galatians 6:16

### the Israel of God (ULT) the true nation of Israel that belongs to God (UST)

This could refer to: (1) believers in general are the Israel of God (2) Jewish believers are the Israel of God (3) the Jews in general are the Israel of God

#### Translation Words - ULT

- will walk
- peace
- mercy
- Israel
- of God

#### Translation Words - UST

- May God give peace
- act kindly toward
- live
- of Israel
- God

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> And as many as will walk in this standard, peace and mercy upon them and upon the Israel of God.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> May God give peace and act kindly toward all who live like this. These believers are the true nation of Israel that belongs to God!

## Galatians 6:17

### me trouble (ULT)

### trouble me (UST)

This means Paul does not want the Galatian believers to doubt his authority or continue to cause him trouble by following teachers who demand them to become circumcised.

### From now on...for I carry in my body the marks...of Jesus (ULT)

Here, **the marks** were scars from people who beat and whipped Paul because they did not like him teaching about Jesus. Alternate translation: "for the scars on my body show that I serve Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- trouble
- carry
- body
- of Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- have
- body
- trouble
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> From now on let no one cause me trouble, for I carry in my body the marks of Jesus.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> I say that people have persecuted me for declaring the truth about Jesus, and as a result I have scars on my body, unlike your new teachers. So let no one trouble me about these matters again!

## Galatians 6:18

### brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers (UST)

See how you translated this in [Galatians 1:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- of...Lord
- Jesus
- Christ
- spirit
- brothers
- Amen

### Translation Words - UST

- My fellow believers
- Lord
- Jesus
- the Messiah
- may...kindly be good
- Amen
- spirit, wind, breath

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> The [grace](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#) {be} with your [spirit](#), [brothers](#). [Amen](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [My fellow believers](#), may our [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#) kindly be good to all of you. [Amen!](#)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 33**

## Abstract Nouns

### Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:13](#); [1:15](#); [1:23](#); [2:9](#); [3:7](#))

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.



## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:22](#); [2:3](#); [3:19](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [4:3](#); [5:11](#); [6:1](#))

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.  
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**  
or:  
At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](https://www.unfoldingword.com/en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo)

**(Go back to: Galatians 1 General Notes\n\n## Structure and formatting\n\nPaul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was "not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones." Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.\n\n## Special concepts in this chapter\n\n### Heresy\n\nGod eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: save, saved, safe, salvation, eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever, good news, gospel and condemn, condemned, condemnation and curse, cursed,**

[cursing](#))\n\n### Paul's qualifications\n\nSome people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))\n\n## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter\n\n### "You are turning so quickly to a different gospel"\n\nThe Book of Galatians is one of Paul's earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)); 1:1; 1:2; 1:6; 1:8; 1:9; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 1:20; 1:23; 2:4; 2:10; 2:12; 3:4; 3:5; 3:23; 5:1; 5:4; 5:11; 5:13)

## Blessings

### Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

This page answers the question: *What are blessings, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-poetry\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

### Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul’s second letter to Timothy:

Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)  
The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

▮ The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide 'God' as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

▮ The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

▮ They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them."

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

▮ The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God's presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

▮ "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

"Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them."

"Our sister, by God's power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them."

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:3](#))



## Collective Nouns

### Description

This page answers the question: *What are collective nouns and how can I translate them?*

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family**, **clan**, or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

### Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.

Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns.

Examples (from Wikipedia):

- a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
- a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.

Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.

Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

### Examples from the Bible

And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated “your” and “you” are plural, referring to many people. The word “heart” is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, “Israel” is singular, but means “the Israelites” by metonymy.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
- (2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
- (3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
- (4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go.”

And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

- (2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go."

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:14](#))

## Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a contrast relationship?*

### Contrast Relationship

#### Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words “but,” “although,” “even though,” “though,” “yet,” or “however.”

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph’s brothers’ evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God’s good plan to save many people. The word “but” marks the contrast.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word “yet.”

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

#### Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

{David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)

[David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [1:12](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:23](#))

## Connect — Exception Clauses

### Exceptional Relationship

This page answers the question: *How can I translate exception clauses?*

### Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however ... not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

### Examples From OBS and the Bible

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

### Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

### Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not a man escaped except for 400 young men**, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not a man escaped**)
- Part 2: (**except for 400 young men**)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only 400 young men** escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it {only you can redeem it}**, and I am after you.

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will let you go **only if** you bless me."

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:7](#); [1:19](#))

## Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

### Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

#### Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison.**  
(Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian.** (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes.** Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean,** and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened,** which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)



The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with “and.” Then the word “so” marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
- (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!” (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!”

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

- (2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17bULT)

“... keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “... keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance.**

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:4; 1:16](#))

## Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

### Conditional Relationships

This page answers the question: *How can I translate hypothetical conditions?*

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words “if ... then.” Often, however, the word “then” is not stated.

### Hypothetical Condition

#### Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the “then” clause) will only take place if the first event (the “if” clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God’s promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God’s promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the “if clause”) is stated after the “then” clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

#### Translation Strategies

- (1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.
- (2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like “then.”

God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

... **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#))

## Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the reason-result relationship?*

### Reason-and-Result Relationships

#### Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — “I did Y because I wanted X to happen.” But usually it is looking backward — “X happened, and so I did Y.” Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are “because,” “so,” “therefore,” and “for.” Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus!  
(Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. “Because” connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves.  
(Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by “so that.” Notice that the term “so that” often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

“Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God.” (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.
- (2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.
- (3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

- (1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.
- (2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.
- (3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

- (1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.
- (2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.
- (3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

**Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

- (1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.
- (2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.
- (3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:24](#))

## Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

### Time Relationships

Some connectors establish time relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate clauses with a sequential time relationship?*

### Sequential Clause

#### Description

A sequential clause is a time relation that connects two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

#### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages indicate sequences of events in different ways; some use ordering, some use connecting words, some even use relative tense (Relative tense is a tense that refers to a time in relation to a reference point in the context.) Connecting words that may indicate sequence are words such as “then,” “later,” “after,” “afterward,” “before,” “first,” and “when.” Translators need to be certain that they communicate the order of the events in a way that is natural in their language. This may require ordering clauses differently than in the original languages.

#### Examples From OBS and the Bible

**When** Joseph came to his brothers, they kidnapped him and sold him to some slave traders. (OBS Story 8 Frame 2)

First Joseph came to his brothers, and then they kidnapped and sold him. We know this because of the connecting word “**when**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

It was as sweet as honey in my mouth, but **after** I ate it, my stomach became bitter. (Revelation 10:10b ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs first, and the event of the last clause occurs later. We know this because of the connecting word “**after**.” The translator needs to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

The event of the first clause occurs after the event of the second clause. First the land they dread will be desolate, and then the child will know to refuse evil and choose good. We know this because of the connecting word “**before**.” However, stating the clauses in this order may communicate the wrong order of events in your language. The translator may have to change the order so that the clauses come in the order that they happen. Or it may be possible to keep the order of the original language text and mark the ordering of sequence so that it is clear to the readers. You (the translator) need to decide the best way to communicate this sequence clearly and correctly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Here the general connector “**and**” connects four events. These are sequential events—each happens after the one before it. We know this because that is the only way that these events would happen. So in English, the general

connector “and” is enough to make the sequence clear for events such as these. You will need to decide if this also communicates this sequence clearly and correctly in your language.

## Translation Strategies

If the sequence of events is clear in your language, then translate the sequence as it is.

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.
- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the connecting word is not clear, use a connecting word that communicates the sequence more clearly.

Then Mary arose in those days **and** quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah, **and** she entered into the house of Zechariah **and** greeted Elizabeth. (Luke 1:39-40 ULT)

Then Mary arose in those days. **Then** she quickly went into the hill country, to a city of Judah. **Then** she entered into the house of Zechariah, **and then** she greeted Elizabeth.

For **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate (Isaiah 7:16 ULT)

For the time will come when the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good, **but even before that time**, the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate.

- (2) If the clauses are in an order that makes the sequence unclear, put the clauses in an order that is more clear.

For the land whose two kings you dread will be desolate **before** the child knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.

For more about sequences of events, see Sequence of Events.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:18](#); [1:21](#))



## Connecting Words and Phrases

### Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.

**Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

### Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

## The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- [Sequential Clause](#) — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- [Exceptional Relationship](#) — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- [Hypothetical Condition](#) — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- [Goal Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- [Reason and Result Relationship](#) — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- [Contrast Relationship](#) — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

## Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

**Therefore**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “therefore” links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “but” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words “so that” connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

## General Translation Strategies

### See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
- (3) Use a different connecting word.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so.”

Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “instead” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

**Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.  
**And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#))

## Copy or Borrow Words

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Examples From the Bible

Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

- (1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
- (2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
- (3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

.A man's name in Hebrew letters — זְפַנְיָהּ  
 "Zephaniah" — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah — This is a man's name.  
 "Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."  
 "Sefania"  
 "Sefanaia"  
 "Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:5; Notes](#))

## Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

### Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
  - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

█ The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

█ A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

## Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

## Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
- (2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

>

**Because idols are worthless**, I hate those who serve them.

... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

... for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)



The phrase “who is 90 years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

>

Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

I will call on Yahweh, **who is worthy to be praised**. (2 Samuel 22:4a ULT) There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because **he is worthy to be praised**

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

**Receiving my love**, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Double Negatives](#)

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [1:4](#); [1:15](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

## Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰῶτα ἐν ἧ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](https://www.unfoldingword.com/en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs/)

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1; 2:2](#))

## Ellipsis

### Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[<sup>1</sup>] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

### Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:7](#); [1:12](#); [6:14](#))

## Exclamations

### Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

### Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

### Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.



(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, “**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.””

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

“**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:20](#))

## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

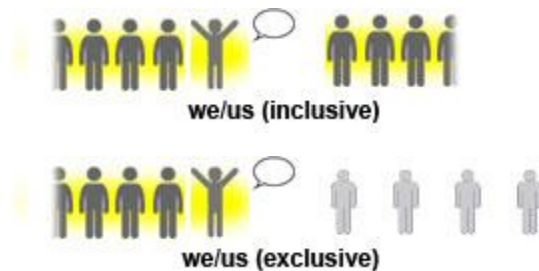
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

## Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:3; 1:8; 1:9; 2:16; 3:14; 3:21; 4:3; 5:5](#))

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:3](#); [2:14](#); [3:8](#); [3:16](#); [4:7](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of 'You' — Singular](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

## Forms of 'You' — Singular

### Description

Some languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a **plural** form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. Translators who speak one of these languages will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language. Other languages, such as English, have only one form, which people use regardless of how many people it refers to.

This page answers the question: *How do I know if the word 'you' is singular?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[Forms of You](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. These languages all have both a singular form of “you” and a plural form of “you.” When we read the Bible in those languages, the pronouns and verb forms show us whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. When we read the Bible in a language that does not have different forms of you, we need to look at the context to see how many people the speaker was speaking to.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators who speak a language that has distinct singular and plural forms of “you” will always need to know what the speaker meant so they can choose the right word for “you” in their language.
- Many languages also have different forms of the verb depending on whether the subject is singular or plural. So even if there is no pronoun meaning “you,” translators of these languages will need to know if the speaker was referring to one person or more than one.

Often the context will make it clear whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one. If you look at the other pronouns in the sentence, they will help you know the number of people the speaker was speaking to. Sometimes Greek and Hebrew speakers used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. (See Forms of 'You' — Singular to a Crowd.)

### Examples From the Bible

But he said, “All these things I have kept from my youth.” But when he heard this, Jesus said to him, “One thing is still lacking to **you**. All things, as much as **you** have, sell all and distribute to the poor, and **you** will have treasure in heaven—and come, follow me.” (Luke 18:21-22 ULT)

The ruler was speaking about just himself when he said “I.” This shows us that when Jesus said “you” he was referring only to the ruler. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” need the singular form here.

The angel said to him, “Dress **yourself** and put on **your** sandals.” So he did that. He said to him, “Put on **your** outer garment and follow me.” (Acts 12:8 ULT)

The context makes it clear that the angel was speaking to one person and that only one person did what the the angel commanded. So languages that have singular and plural forms of “you” would need the singular form here for “yourself” and “your.” Also, if verbs have different forms for singular and plural subjects, then the verbs “dress” and “put on” need the form that indicates a singular subject.

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. For this purpose I left **you** in Crete, that **you** might set in order things not yet complete and ordain elders in every city as I directed **you**. But **you**, say what fits with sound teaching. (Titus 1:4a, 5; 2:1 ULT)

Paul wrote this letter to one person, Titus. Most of the time the word “you” in this letter refers only to Titus.

## Strategies for finding out how many people “you” refers to

- (1) Look at the notes to see if they tell whether “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (2) Look at the UST to see if it says anything that would show you whether the word “you” refers to one person or more than one person.
- (3) If you have a Bible that is written in a language that distinguishes “you” singular from “you” plural, see which form of “you” that Bible has in that sentence.
- (4) Look at the context to see how many people the speaker was talking to and who responded.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:14; 6:1](#))



## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:17](#); [1:18](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said,  
“For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

**(Go back to:** [Introduction to Galatians](#) Part 1: [General Introduction](#) [Outline of the Book of Galatians](#). Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10). Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21). God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31). When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10). Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18). **Who wrote the Book of Galatians?** Paul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches. It is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled. **What is the Book of Galatians about?** Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news, gospel, save, saved, safe, salvation, faith and law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God and work, works, deeds](#)) **How should the title of this book be translated?** Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#)) **Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts** **What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?** To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers." **Part 3: Important Translation Issues** **How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?** These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)) **What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"** Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ." See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of "in Christ" and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#)) Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression. **What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?** "Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes" (3:1)? The

ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, “[so] that ye should not obey the truth.” Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators’ region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

### Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

### Examples From the Bible

#### Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)



Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

## Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

## Hypothetical Situation in the Future

**Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved.** But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

## Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](https://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [Galatians 2 General Notes](#); [2:21](#); [3:18](#); [5:11](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

▮ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

▮ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

▮ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

▮ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

▮ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

▮ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

▮ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

▮ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

▮ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

▮ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

▮ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

▮ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:13](#); [1:15](#); [5:16](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."  
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples From the Bible

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshipping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They

emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

**How well you reject the commandment of God** so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;  
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:1; 3:2](#))

## Litotes

### Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a [double negative](#) is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

### Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

### Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)



“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good.**”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:20](#); [2:21](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#)

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, “He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**” (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad.** (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a pointed stick.**

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay.** You are our **potter;** and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood.** You are our **carver;** and we all are the work of your hand.”

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string.** You are the **weaver;** and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

**(Go back to: Introduction to Galatians**  
**Part 1: General Introduction**  
**Outline of the Book of Galatians**  
 1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).  
 2. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).  
 3. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).  
 4. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).  
 5. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).  
**Who wrote the Book of Galatians?**  
 Paul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.  
 It is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.  
**What is the Book of Galatians about?**  
 Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: good news, gospel, save, saved, safe, salvation, faith and law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God and work, works, deeds)  
**How should the title of this book be translated?**  
 Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))  
**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**  
**What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?**  
 To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."  
**Part 3: Important Translation Issues**  
**How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?**  
 These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of

Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called “the law of Christ.” (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))\n\n#### What did Paul mean by the expressions “in Christ,” and “in Christ Jesus?”\n\nPaul uses the spatial metaphor “in Christ” or the related phrase “in Christ Jesus” very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses “in Christ” simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase “in Christ” he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says “we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ” and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said “when we seek for God to justify us in Christ.” See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of “in Christ” and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))\n\nPlease see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.\n\n#### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?\n\* “Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes” (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, “[so] that ye should not obey the truth.” Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators’ region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#)); [Galatians 1:14](#); [1:22](#); [2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:9](#); [2:18](#); [Notes](#); [3:1](#); [3:7](#); [3:10](#); [3:18](#); [3:23](#); [3:27](#); [3:29](#); [4:3](#); [4:5](#); [4:7](#); [4:9](#); [4:19](#); [4:24](#); [4:25](#); [4:29](#); [Notes](#); [5:1](#); [5:4](#); [5:7](#); [5:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [5:16](#); [5:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#))



# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment?**”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [1:4](#); [1:23](#); [2:6](#); [2:11](#); [3:3](#); [3:10](#); [3:13](#); [3:22](#); [4:6](#); [5:6](#); [6:12](#))

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1; 3:11](#))

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.  
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:17](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]



Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet  
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:12](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:8](#); [3:22](#); [3:24](#); [4:24](#); [5:16](#); [5:24](#))

## Possession

### Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “of,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
  - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
  - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
  - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
  - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
  - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
  - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
  - my head — the head that is part of my body
  - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

### Examples From the Bible

**Ownership** — In the example below, the son owned the money.

▮ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

**Social Relationship** — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

**Association** — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

**Material** — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

**Contents** — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

**Part of a whole** — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

**Part of a group** — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

## Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

**Subject** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

**Object** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

**Instrument** — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

**Representation** — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

## Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

## Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.

or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

|| You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you.**

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:2](#); [1:7](#); [1:12](#))



## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:10](#); [2:14](#); [2:17](#); [Notes](#); [3:1](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:19](#); [4:9](#); [4:21](#); [5:11](#))

## Symbolic Action

### Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

### Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

### Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:9](#))

## Synecdoche

### Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

▮ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

▮ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

### Example From the Bible

▮ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

### Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

▮ “**My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

▮ “**I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

▮ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:16](#); [1:22](#); [2:16](#); [4:24](#))

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” 16 [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

**(Go back to:** [Introduction to Galatians](#)\n\n### [Part 1: General Introduction](#)\n\n### [Outline of the Book of Galatians](#)\n\n1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).\n1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).\n1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).\n1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other’s burdens (5:1-6:10).\n1. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).\n\n### [Who wrote the Book of Galatians?](#)\n\nPaul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.\n\nIt is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.\n\n### [What is the Book of Galatians about?](#)\n\nPaul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of

believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news, gospel, save, saved, safe, salvation, faith and law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God and work, works, deeds](#))\n\n### How should the title of this book be translated?\n\nTranslators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “Galatians.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “Paul’s Letter to the Church in Galatia.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))\n\n## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts\n\n### What does it mean to “live like Jews” (2:14)?\n\nTo “live like Jews” means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called “Judaizers.”\n\n## Part 3: Important Translation Issues\n\n### How did Paul use the terms “law” and “grace” in the Book of Galatians?\n\nThese terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called “the law of Christ.” (See: [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))\n\n### What did Paul mean by the expressions “in Christ,” and “in Christ Jesus?”\n\nPaul uses the spatial metaphor “in Christ” or the related phrase “in Christ Jesus” very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses “in Christ” simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase “in Christ” he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says “we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ” and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said “when we seek for God to justify us in Christ.” See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of “in Christ” and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))\n\nPlease see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.\n\n### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?\n\n\* “Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes” (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, “[so] that ye should not obey the truth.” Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators’ region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

### Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

**I love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

**No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.**

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."

(2) If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:20](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#))

## When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun\]\]](#)

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise son makes **his** father rejoice  
but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples From the Bible

Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

- (1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”

“Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

“If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”  
(Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

>

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [6:7](#))

## When to Keep Information Implicit

### Description

Sometimes it is better not to state assumed knowledge or implicit information explicitly. This page gives some direction about when not to do this.

This page answers the question: *When should I not make implicit information explicit?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

### Translation Principles

- If a speaker or author intentionally left something unclear, do not try to make it more clear.
- If the original audience did not understand what the speaker meant, do not make it so clear that your readers would find it strange that the original audience did not understand.
- If you need to explicitly state some assumed knowledge or implicit information, try to do it in a way that does not make your readers think that the original audience needed to be told those things.
- Do not make implicit information explicit if it confuses the message or leads the reader to forget what the main point is.
- Do not make assumed knowledge or implicit information explicit if your readers already understand it.

### Examples From the Bible

From the eater came forth food;  
and from the strong one came forth sweetness. (Judges 14:14 ULT)

This was a riddle. Samson purposely said this in a way that it would be hard for his enemies to know what it meant. Do not make it clear that the eater and the strong thing was a lion and that the sweet thing to eat was honey.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." They reasoned among themselves saying, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Some possible implicit information here is that the disciples should beware of the false teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. But Jesus' disciples did not understand this. They thought that Jesus was talking about real yeast and bread. So it would not be appropriate to state explicitly that the word "yeast" here refers to false teaching. The disciples did not understand what Jesus meant until they heard what Jesus said in Matthew 16:11.

"How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. (Matthew 16:11-12 ULT)

Only after Jesus explained that he was not talking about bread did they realize that he was talking about the false teaching of the Pharisees. Therefore, it would be wrong to explicitly state the implicit information in Matthew 16:6.

### Translation Strategies

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies.

## **Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

Because we recommend that translators not change this kind of passage to make it more clear, this page does not have any translation strategies applied.

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#))





# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 36**

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:14](#); [3:16](#); [3:18](#); [3:29](#); [4:22](#))

## adoption, adopt, adopted

### Definition:

The terms “adopt” and “adoption” refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses “adoption” and “adopt” in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase “experience adoption as sons” could be translated as “be adopted by God as his children” or “become God’s (spiritual) children.”
- To “wait for the adoption of sons” could be translated as “look forward to becoming God’s children” or “wait expectantly for God to receive as children.”
- The phrase “adopt them” could be translated as “receive them as his own children” or “make them his own (spiritual) children.”

(See also: [heir](#), [inherit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 1:5
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Romans 8:14-15
- Romans 8:23
- Romans 9:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G52060

(Go back to: [Galatians 4 General Notes; 4:5](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:16](#))

## age, aged

### Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G01650, G10740

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:4](#))

## **amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded**

### **Definition:**

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), sign)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:6](#))

## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:5](#); [6:18](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130



(Go back to: [Galatians 4:2](#))

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:8](#); [3:19](#); [4:14](#))

## Antioch

### Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

- The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called “Christians.” The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
- The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn’t have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
- Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), Colossae, John Mark, [Paul](#), province, Rome, [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 3:10-13
- Acts 6:5-6
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 11:26
- Galatians 2:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G04910

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:11](#))

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), [Paul](#), the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [1:17](#); [1:19](#); [2:8](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:2](#))

## Arabia, Arabian

### Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term "Arabian" is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham's son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esau, [Galatia](#), Ishmael, Shem, [Sinai](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 2:11
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 2:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G06880, G06900

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:17](#); [4:25](#))

## baptize, baptized, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:38
- Acts 8:36
- Acts 9:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:3** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:7** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:5** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G09070



(Go back to: [Galatians 3:27](#))

## Barnabas

### Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Christian, Cyprus, [good news](#), Levite, [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:36
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 13:3
- Acts 15:33
- Colossians 4:10-11
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:8** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **46:9** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G09210

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:1](#); [2:9](#); [2:13](#))

## barren, dry

### Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:27](#))

## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), Elisha, endure, [fruit](#), iniquity, report, sheep, [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:10](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:17](#))

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), Christian, disciple, [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:16](#); [3:6](#); [3:22](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”



- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:14](#); [4:15](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:16](#))

## boast, boastful

### Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- James 3:14
- James 4:15-17
- Psalms 44:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G02120, G02130, G17400, G26200, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31660

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:26](#); [6:4](#); [6:13](#); [6:14](#))

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); [face](#); [loins](#); [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:17](#))

## born again, born of God, new birth

### Definition:

The term “born again” was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms “born of God” and “born of the Spirit” also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a “new birth” when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God’s Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God’s work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “born again” could include “born anew” or “born spiritually.”
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term “new birth” might be translated as “spiritual birth.”
- The phrase “born of God” could be translated as “caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby” or “given new life by God.”
- In the same way, “born of the Spirit” could be translated as “given new life by the Holy Spirit” or “empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God’s child” or “caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit, save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:9
- 1 Peter 1:3
- 1 Peter 1:23
- John 3:4
- John 3:7
- Titus 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03130, G05090, G10800, G38240

(Go back to: [Galatians 6 General Notes](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:2](#); [1:11](#); [1:19](#); [3:15](#); [4:12](#); [4:28](#); [4:31](#); [5:11](#); [5:13](#); [6:1](#); [6:18](#))

## burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:2](#); [6:5](#))



## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:6](#); [1:15](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#))

## cast out, driving out, throw out

### Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:30](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), beloved)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:29](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [4:19](#); [4:25](#); [4:27](#); [4:28](#); [4:31](#))

## Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), David, [Jesus](#), anoint)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: Galatians 1:1; 1:3; 1:6; 1:7; 1:10; 1:12; 1:22; 2:4; 2:16; 2:17; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 3:1; 3:13; 3:14; 3:16; 3:22; 3:24; 3:26; 3:27; 3:28; 3:29; 4:14; 4:19; 5:1; 5:2; 5:4; 5:6; 5:24; 6:2; 6:12; 6:14; 6:18)

## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, [believe](#), Christian)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.



## Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:2](#); [1:13](#); [1:22](#))

## Cilicia

### Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

- The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
- Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
- Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Paul](#), Stephen, Tarsus)

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 27:3-6
- Galatians 1:21-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G27910

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:21](#))

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Abraham](#), [covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48

- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:3](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:6](#); [5:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:15](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:27](#))

## column, pillar

### Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [false god](#), image)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:9](#))

## condemn, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), punish)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

**(Go back to: [Galatians 1 General Notes](#) Structure and formatting** Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was “not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones.” Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority. Special concepts in this chapter Heresy God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#) and [condemn](#), [condemned](#), [condemnation](#) and [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#)) Paul's qualifications Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#)) Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter “You are turning so quickly to a different gospel” The Book of Galatians is one of Paul's earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)); 2:11)

## confidence, confident

### Definition:

The term "confidence" refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as "confidence" or "confidence for the future" or "future confidence" especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term "confidence" refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, "have confidence in God" means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being "confident" means believing in God's promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "confident" could be translated as "assured" or "very sure."
- The phrase "be confident" could also be translated as "trust completely" or "be completely sure about" or "know for certain."
- The term "confidently" could also be translated as "boldly" or "with certainty."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confidence" could include, "complete assurance" or "sure expectation" or "certainty."

(See also: [believe](#), [believe](#), [bold](#), [faithful](#), [hope](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G22920, G39540, G39820, G40060, G52870

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:10](#))



## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:15](#); [3:17](#); [4:24](#))

## create, created, creation, creator

### Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:15](#))

## **cross**

### **Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [crucify](#), Rome)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 1:17
- Colossians 2:15
- Galatians 6:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 9:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 2:8

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:2** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G47160

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:14](#))

## crucify, crucified

### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:19](#); [3:1](#); [5:24](#); [6:14](#))

## **cry, cry out, outcry**

### **Definition:**

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead, pray)

### **Bible References:**

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:6](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **2:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **4:4** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

**(Go back to: Galatians 1 General Notes**  
**## Structure and formatting**  
 Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was “not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones.” Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.  
**## Special concepts in this chapter**  
**## Heresy**  
 God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: [save, saved, safe, salvation, eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever, good news, gospel](#) and [condemn, condemned, condemnation](#) and [curse, cursed, cursing](#))  
**## Paul’s qualifications**  
 Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#))  
**## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**  
**## “You are turning so quickly to a different gospel”**  
 The Book of Galatians is one of Paul’s earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:13](#))



## Damascus

### Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, Assyria, [believe](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 9:3
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G11540

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:17](#))

## day

### Definition:

The term "day" generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- "Day" is sometimes used in contrast to "night." In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as "today."
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days." Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" non-figuratively.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as "day" or "daytime" using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of "day" could include "daytime," "time," "season," "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, last day)

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:18](#); [4:10](#))

## deceive, lie, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:3; 6:7](#))

## deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:4](#))

## devour

### Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: consume)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:15](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

## 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

## 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [2:19](#); [2:21](#))

## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: wine)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:21](#))



## enslave, slave, bondservant, bound

### Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants. Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3533, H5647, G13980, G14020, G26150

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:4](#); [4:3](#); [4:9](#); [4:25](#))

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:21](#); [5:26](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [Galatians 1 General Notes](#) Structure and formatting Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was “not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones.” Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority. Special concepts in this chapter Heresy God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#) and [condemn](#), [condemned](#), [condemnation](#) and [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#)) Paul’s qualifications Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#)) Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter “You are turning so quickly to a different gospel” The Book of Galatians is one of Paul’s earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)); 6:8)

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:4](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:22](#); [2:6](#); [2:11](#))



## faith

### Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

**(Go back to:** [Introduction to Galatians](#) Part 1: [General Introduction](#) [Outline of the Book of Galatians](#). Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10). Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21). God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31). When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10). Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).

**Who wrote the Book of Galatians?** Paul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches. It is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.

**What is the Book of Galatians about?** Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news, gospel, save, saved, safe, salvation, faith and law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God and work, works, deeds](#))

**How should the title of this book be translated?** Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**

**What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?** To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."

**Part 3: Important Translation Issues**

**How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?** These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))

**What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"** Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ." See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of "in Christ" and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#)) Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

**What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?** "Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes" (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, "[so] that ye should not obey the truth." Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators' region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#)); [Galatians 1:23; 2:16; 2:20; 3:2; 3:5; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:11; 3:12; 3:14; 3:22; 3:23; 3:24; 3:25; 3:26; Notes; 5:5; 5:6; Notes; 6:10](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:9; 5:22](#))

## fear, afraid, frighten

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), [marvel](#), power)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:12](#); [4:11](#))

## fellowship

### Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- Philippians 1:3-6
- Philippians 2:1
- Philippians 3:10
- Psalms 55:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G28420, G28440, G33520, G47900

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:9](#))

## flesh

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:16](#); [2:16](#); [2:20](#); [Notes](#); [3:3](#); [4:13](#); [4:14](#); [4:23](#); [4:29](#); [5:13](#); [5:16](#); [5:17](#); [5:19](#); [5:24](#); [Notes](#); [6:8](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#))

## fool, foolish, folly

### Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:1](#); [3:3](#))



## free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:4](#); [3:28](#); [4:22](#); [4:23](#); [4:26](#); [4:30](#); [4:31](#); [5:1](#); [5:13](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, [Holy Spirit](#), vine, [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Galatians 5 General Notes; 5:22](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:14](#); [6:2](#))

## Galatia, Galatians

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Cilicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asia, [believe](#), [Cilicia](#), [good news](#), [Paul](#), [works](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 4:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G10530, G10540

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:2](#); [3:1](#))

## Gentile

### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:16](#); [2:2](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [3:8](#); [3:14](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:5](#); [1:24](#))



## God

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:10](#); [1:13](#); [1:20](#); [1:24](#); [2:6](#); [2:19](#); [2:21](#); [3:6](#); [3:8](#); [3:11](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [3:26](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:14](#); [6:7](#); [6:16](#))

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [4:6](#))

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:8](#); [5:20](#))

## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

**(Go back to: Introduction to Galatians**  
**Part 1: General Introduction**  
**Outline of the Book of Galatians**  
 1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).  
 1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).  
 1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).  
 1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).  
 1. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).  
**Who wrote the Book of Galatians?**  
 Paul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.  
 It is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.  
**What is the Book of Galatians about?**  
 Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news, gospel, save, saved, safe, salvation, faith and law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God and work, works, deeds](#))  
**How should the title of this book be translated?**  
 Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))  
**Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**  
**What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?**  
 To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."  
**Part 3: Important Translation Issues**  
**How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?**  
 These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))  
**What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"**  
 Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ." See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of "in Christ" and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))  
 Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.  
**What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?**  
 \* "Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes" (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, "[so] that ye should not obey the truth." Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators'



region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#)); [Galatians 1 General Notes](#)

## Structure and formatting

Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was “not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones.” Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.

## Special concepts in this chapter

## Heresy

God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: [save, saved, safe, salvation, eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever, good news, gospel](#) and [condemn, condemned, condemnation](#) and [curse, cursed, cursing](#))

## Paul’s qualifications

Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#))

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

## “You are turning so quickly to a different gospel”

The Book of Galatians is one of Paul’s earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:14](#); [4:13](#))

## good, right, pleasant, better, best

### Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), prosper, [evil](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:17](#); [4:18](#); [5:22](#); [6:6](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:15](#); [Notes](#); [2:9](#); [2:21](#); [Notes](#); [5:4](#); [6:18](#))

## Greek, Grecian, Hellenist

### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The adjective "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" or "Hellenists" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic. The term "Hellenists" comes from the pronunciation of the Greek word for a Greek-speaker.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Gentile](#), Greece, Hebrew, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 3:11
- Galatians 2:3-5
- John 7:35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G16720, G16730, G16740, G16750, G16760

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:3](#); [3:28](#))

# Hagar

## Facts:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), descendant, Ishmael, Sarah, [servant](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 4:25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:9
- Genesis 25:12

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:2 Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:24](#); [4:25](#))

## hand

### Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

### Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, [right hand](#), honor, [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:19](#); [6:11](#))



## harvest, reap

### Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, [good news](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#))

## heart

### Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:6](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:8](#))

## heir

### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, [inherit](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:29](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#); [3:14](#); [4:6](#); [4:29](#); [5:5](#); [5:16](#); [5:17](#); [5:18](#); [5:22](#); [5:25](#); [6:8](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6



- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Introduction to Galatians](#)\n\n### Part 1: General Introduction\n\n### Outline of the Book of Galatians\n\n1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).\n1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).\n1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).\n1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).\n1. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).\n\n### Who wrote the Book of Galatians?\n\nPaul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.\n\nIt is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.\n\n### What is the Book of Galatians about?\n\nPaul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [faith](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))\n\n### How should the title of this book be translated?\n\nTranslators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))\n\n### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts\n\n### What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?\n\nTo "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers." \n\n### Part 3: Important Translation Issues\n\n### How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?\n\nThese terms are used in

a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called “the law of Christ.” (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

What did Paul mean by the expressions “in Christ,” and “in Christ Jesus?”

Paul uses the spatial metaphor “in Christ” or the related phrase “in Christ Jesus” very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses “in Christ” simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase “in Christ” he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says “we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ” and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said “when we seek for God to justify us in Christ.” See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of “in Christ” and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?

\* “Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes” (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, “[so] that ye should not obey the truth.” Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators’ region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated a, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 2:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:6
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 1:5
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0982, H0983, H0986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G00910, G05600, G16790, G16800, G20700

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:5](#))

## hour, moment, immediately, for a while

### Definition:

The term "hour" is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean "time" or "moment."

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 AM). For example, "the ninth hour" meant "around three in the afternoon."
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 PM). For example, "the third hour of the night" meant "around nine in the evening" in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as "around nine" or "about six o'clock" could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like "in the evening" or "in the morning" or "in the afternoon" to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, "in that hour" could be translated as "at that time" or "in that moment."
- Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as "the time had come for him to" or "the appointed time for him had come."

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:15
- John 4:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8160, G56100

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:5](#))

## household

### Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:10
- Galatians 6:10
- Genesis 7:1
- Genesis 34:19
- John 4:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 4:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G23220, G36090, G36140, G36150, G36160, G36230, G36240

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:10](#))

## hypocrite, hypocrisy

### Definition:

The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

### Bible References:

- Galatians 2:13
- Luke 6:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 7:6-7
- Matthew 6:1-2
- Romans 12:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H2611, H2612, G05050, G52720, G52730

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:13](#))

## in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

### Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G15190, G29620, G55470

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:22](#); [2:4](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [3:26](#); [3:27](#); [5:10](#))

## **in labor, labor pains, birth pains, pains of childbirth**

### **Definition:**

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](#), last day)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 4:19-20
- Galatians 4:19
- Isaiah 13:8
- Jeremiah 13:21
- Psalms 48:6
- Romans 8:22

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2342, H3018, H3205, H5999, H6887, G34490, G49440, G56040, G56050

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:19](#); [4:27](#))



## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:18](#); [Notes](#); [4:30](#); [5:21](#))

## **instruct, instruction, instructors**

### **Facts:**

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [teach](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Exodus 14:4
- Genesis 26:5
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 11:1
- Proverbs 1:30

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H0241, H0376, H0559, H0631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G12560, G12990, G13190, G13210, G13780, G17810, G17850, G27270, G27530, G35590, G35600, G38110, G38520, G38530, G42640, G43670, G48220

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:24](#); [3:25](#))

## Isaac

### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), descendant, [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G24640

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:28](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *\_Israel\_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave \_Israel\_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *\_Israel\_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:16](#))

## it is written

### Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, [law](#), prophet, [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G11250

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:10](#); [3:13](#); [4:22](#); [4:27](#))

## James (brother of Jesus)

### Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), Judas the son of James, [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:9-10
- James 1:1-3
- Jude 1:1-2
- Mark 9:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G23850

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:19](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#))



## jealous, jealousy

### Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Exodus 20:5
- Ezekiel 36:5
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 1:2-3
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G38630

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:20](#))

## Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), David, Jebusites, [Jesus](#), Solomon, temple, Zion)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

**(Go back to: [Galatians 1:17](#); [1:18](#); [2:1](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#))**

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ, God, God the Father](#), high priest, [kingdom of God](#), Mary, Savior, [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:12](#); [2:4](#); [2:16](#); [3:1](#); [3:14](#); [3:22](#); [3:26](#); [3:28](#); [4:14](#); [5:6](#); [5:24](#); [6:12](#); [6:14](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#))

## Jew, Jewish

### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish leaders](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [3:28](#))

## John (the apostle)

### Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), James (son of Zebedee), John (the Baptist), Zebedee)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 2:9-10
- John 1:19-21
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Revelation 1:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- **44:6** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"
- **44:9** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:9](#))

## joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

### Definition:

#### joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13



- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:22](#))

## Judaism, Jewish religion

### Definition:

The term “Judaism” refers to the religion practiced by the Jews. It is also referred to as the “Jewish religion.”

- In the Old Testament, the term “Jewish religion” is used, while in the New Testament, the term “Judaism” is used.
- Judaism includes all the Old Testament laws and instructions that God gave to the Israelites to obey. It also includes the customs and traditions that have been added to the Jewish religion over time.
- When translating, the term “Jewish religion” or “religion of the Jews” can be used in both the Old and New Testaments.
- “Judaism,” however should only be used in the New Testament, since the term did not exist before that time.

(See also: [Jew](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 1:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24540

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:13](#); [1:14](#))

## Judea, Judah

### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G24530

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:22](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:10](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:16](#); [2:17](#); [3:8](#); [3:11](#); [3:24](#); [5:4](#))

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God!** Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God.**”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”



- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:21](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:11](#); [1:22](#); [2:9](#); [2:16](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:13](#))

## labor, laborer, work, hard work

### Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."

(See also: hard, [labor pains](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:11](#))

## law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

### Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good'? There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

**(Go back to:** [Introduction to Galatians](#)  
[Part 1: General Introduction](#)  
[Outline of the Book of Galatians](#)  
 1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).  
 1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).  
 1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).  
 1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).  
 1. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).  
 Who wrote the Book of Galatians?  
 Paul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.  
 It is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.  
 What is the Book of Galatians about?  
 Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [faith](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))  
 How should the title of this book be translated?  
 Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))  
 Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts  
 What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?  
 To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."  
 Part 3: Important Translation Issues  
 How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?  
 These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))  
 What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"  
 Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to

justify us in Christ.” See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of “in Christ” and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))\n\nPlease see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.\n\n\n### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?\n\n\* “Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes” (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, “[so] that ye should not obey the truth.” Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators’ region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#)); [Galatians 1 General Notes](#)\n\n\n## Structure and formatting\n\nPaul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was “not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones.” Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.\n\n\n## Special concepts in this chapter\n\n\n### Heresy\n\nGod eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: [save, saved, safe, salvation, eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever, good news, gospel and condemn, condemned, condemnation and curse, cursed, cursing](#))\n\n\n### Paul’s qualifications\n\nSome people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God](#))\n\n\n## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter\n\n\n### “You are turning so quickly to a different gospel”\n\nThe Book of Galatians is one of Paul’s earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#)); [Notes; 2:16; 2:19; 2:21; 3:2; 3:5; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:21; 3:23; 3:24; 4:4; 4:5; 4:21; Notes; 5:3; 5:4; 5:14; 5:18; 6:13](#))

## law, principle

### Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law of Moses](#), decree, command, declare)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:2
- Esther 3:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:5
- John 18:31
- Romans 7:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:23](#); [6:2](#))



## life, live, living, alive

### Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:14](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:21](#); [5:25](#); [6:8](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:9](#); [2:7](#); [3:6](#); [3:16](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:29](#); [5:14](#); [5:21](#); [6:10](#))

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), ruler, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:3](#); [1:19](#); [4:1](#); [5:10](#); [6:14](#); [6:18](#))

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:20](#); [5:6](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:22](#))

## **lust, lustful, passions, desires**

### **Definition:**

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, [false god](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:16](#); [5:24](#))



## manager, steward, stewardship

### Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:4-5
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 8:3
- Luke 16:2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 1:7

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G20120, G36210, G36230

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:2](#))

## mediator

### Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
- Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: priest, reconcile)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:5
- Galatians 3:20
- Hebrews 8:6
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 12:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3887, G33120, G33160

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:19](#); [3:20](#))

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Timothy 1:13
- Daniel 9:17
- Exodus 34:6
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 2:13
- Luke 6:35-36
- Matthew 9:27
- Philippians 2:25-27
- Psalms 41:4-6
- Romans 12:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:9** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G16530, G16550, G16560, G24330, G24360, G36280, G36290, G37410, G46980

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:16](#))

## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, [apostle](#), sign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:5](#))

## mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

### Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:7](#))

## month, monthly

### Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:10](#))



## nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), people group, Philistines, Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:8](#))

## neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), parable, people group, Samaria)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26-28
- Ephesians 4:25-27
- Galatians 5:14
- James 2:8
- John 9:8-9
- Luke 1:58
- Matthew 5:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G10690, G20870, G40400, G41390

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:14](#))

## ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: command, [covenant](#), decree, [law](#), [law](#), priest)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 3:3
- Psalms 111:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G12990, G25250, G42700, G42820

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:19](#))

## patient, patience, impatient

### Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:22](#))

## Paul, Saul

### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul.**"
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G39720, G45690

**(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1; 5:2](#))**

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:3](#); [5:22](#); [6:16](#))



## persecute

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, [church](#), oppress, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:13](#); [1:23](#); [4:29](#); [5:11](#); [6:12](#))

## **perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion**

### **Definition:**

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, [deceive](#), disobey, [evil](#), [turn](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 8:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:2
- Psalms 101:4-6

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G12940

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:7](#))

## Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: disciple, [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 8:25
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 3:16
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:9 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:1** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:5** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
- **38:9 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:8 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G27860, G40740, G46130

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:18](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:14](#))

## plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

### Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

### Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [harvest](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 6:8
- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:7; 6:8](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: declare, [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:2](#); [5:11](#))

## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:22](#); [3:23](#))

## profit, profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: worthy)

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- Job 15:3
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 2:8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 6:63
- Mark 8:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 2:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G01470, G02550, G05120, G08880, G08890, G08900, G12810, G25850, G27700, G27710, G34080, G42970, G42980, G48510, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:2](#))



## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), oath, vow)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”<sup>⚡</sup>
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:14](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:29](#); [Notes](#); [4:23](#); [4:28](#))

## raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), exalt)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:1](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

**(Go back to: [Galatians 1:9](#); [1:12](#); [2:6](#); [3:2](#); [3:14](#); [4:5](#); [4:14](#))**

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:13; 4:5](#))

## reject, rejected, rejection

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 4:12-14
- Hosea 4:6-7
- Isaiah 41:9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 7:9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0947, H0959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G01140, G04830, G05500, G05790, G05800, G05930, G06830, G07200, G16090, G38680

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:21](#); [3:15](#); [4:14](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:1](#))



## return, turn back

### Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshipping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:17](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:12](#); [1:16](#); [2:2](#); [3:23](#))

## right hand

### Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, [evil](#), honor, mighty, punish, rebel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:9](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#), obey, pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

**(Go back to: Introduction to Galatians\n\n## Part 1: General Introduction\n\n### Outline of the Book of Galatians\n\n1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).\n1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).\n1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).\n1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).\n1. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).\n\n### Who wrote the Book of Galatians?\n\nPaul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.\n\nIt is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell**

people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.

### What is the Book of Galatians about?

Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news, gospel, save, saved, safe, salvation, faith and law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God and work, works, deeds](#))

### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?

To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?

These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#) and [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#))

### What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"

Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ." See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of "in Christ" and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?

\* "Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes" (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, "[so] that ye should not obey the truth." Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators' region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#)); [Galatians 2:21](#); [3:6](#); [3:11](#); [3:21](#); [5:5](#))

## run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

### Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: \* To “run in such a way as to win the prize” refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. \* To “run in the path of your commands” means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. \* To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. \* “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. \* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country. \* Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” \* The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”\*

(See also: [false god](#), persevere, refuge, [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:18
- Galatians 2:2
- Galatians 5:7
- Philippians 2:16
- Proverbs 1:16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0213, H0386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G04130, G13770, G16010, G15300, G15320, G19980, G27010, G37290, G40630, G43700, G43900, G48900, G49360, G51430, G52400, G52950, G53430

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:2; 5:7](#))



## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), punish, [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Introduction to Galatians](#)\n\n### Part 1: General Introduction\n\n### Outline of the Book of Galatians\n\n1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).\n1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).\n1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).\n1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).\n1. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).\n\n### Who wrote the Book of Galatians?\n\nPaul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.\n\nIt is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.\n\n### What is the Book of Galatians about?\n\nPaul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [faith](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))\n\n### How should the title of this book be translated?\n\nTranslators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))\n\n### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts\n\n### What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?\n\nTo "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."\n\n### Part 3: Important Translation Issues\n\n### How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?\n\nThese terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of

Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"

Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ." See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of "in Christ" and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?

"Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes" (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, "[so] that ye should not obey the truth." Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators' region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#)); [Galatians 1 General Notes](#)

Structure and formatting

Paul started this letter differently than his other letters. He adds that he was "not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones." Paul probably included these words because false teachers were opposing him and trying to undermine his authority.

Special concepts in this chapter

Heresy

God eternally saves people only through the true, biblical gospel. God condemns any other version of the gospel. Paul asks God to curse those who teach a false gospel. (See: [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#) and [condemn](#), [condemned](#), [condemnation](#) and [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

Paul's qualifications

Some people in the early church were teaching that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. To refute this teaching, in verses 13-16 Paul explains how he was formerly a zealous Jew. But Paul still needed God to save him through believing in Jesus. As a Jew, and the apostle to Gentile people, Paul was uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"You are turning so quickly to a different gospel"

The Book of Galatians is one of Paul's earliest letters in Scripture. It shows that heresies troubled even the early church. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: [children](#), descendant)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:16](#); [3:19](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:10](#); [2:17](#))

## self-control, self-controlled

### Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:8-9
- 2 Peter 1:5-7
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- Galatians 5:23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4623, H7307, G01920, G01930, G14660, G14670, G14680, G49970

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:23](#))

## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#), [castout](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:4; 4:6](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))



## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:10](#); [3:28](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:22](#); [4:23](#); [4:24](#); [4:30](#); [4:31](#); [5:1](#); [5:13](#))

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:15](#); [2:12](#))

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), prostitute, [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:19](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:4](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [Notes](#); [3:22](#); [Notes](#))

## Sinai, Horeb

### Facts:

Mount Sinai or Mount Horeb is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula, but the exact location of this mountain is not known.

- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.
- It is also called the “mountain of God.”
- It was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- It was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.

(See also: desert, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 4:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 1:17-19
- 1 Kings 8:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- Deuteronomy 1:2
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Psalms 106:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:1** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722, H5514, G37350, G46140

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:24](#); [4:25](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, [ancestor](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:7](#); [4:22](#); [4:30](#))



## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:16](#); [2:20](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#))

## sons of God, children of God

### Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:26](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#))

## **sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician**

### **Definition:**

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, [false god](#), magic, sacrifice, worship)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 8:9-11
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Revelation 9:20-21

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G30950, G30960, G30970, G53310, G53320, G53330

(**Go back to:** [Galatians 5:20](#))

## spirit, wind, breath

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person's spirit was closely related to the concept of a person's breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah." Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person's attitude or emotional state, such as "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives."
- Sometimes this term can be translated as "wind" when referring to the simple movement of air or "breath" when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, [Holy Spirit](#), demon, breath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Galatians 3 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [6:1](#); [6:18](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,  
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

**(Go back to: [Galatians 5:6](#))**



## strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict

### Definition:

The term "strife" refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word "strife" implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "disagreement" or "dispute" or "conflict."

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 3:3-5
- Habakkuk 1:3
- Philippians 1:17
- Proverbs 17:1
- Psalms 55:8-9
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G04850, G20520, G20540, G30550, G31630, G53790

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:20](#))

## stumbling block, stone of stumbling

### Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:23
- Galatians 5:11
- Matthew 5:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 9:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G30370, G43490, G46250

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:11](#))

## submit, submission, in submission

### Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: subject)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 3:1
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, G52260, G52930

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:5](#))

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:4](#))

## Syria, Ashur

### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, commander, [Damascus](#), descendant, Elisha, leprosy, Naaman, [persecute](#), prophet)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:3
- Galatians 1:21-24
- Matthew 4:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0758, H0804, G49470, G49480

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:21](#))

## teach, teaching, untaught

### Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:12](#); [6:6](#))

## tempt, temptation

### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, Satan, [sin](#), test)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:4-5
- Hebrews 4:15
- James 1:13
- Luke 4:2
- Luke 11:4
- Matthew 26:41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H5254, G05510, G15980, G39850, G39860, G39870

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:1](#))



## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), prophet, [true](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:15](#); [5:3](#))

## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: doublet)

(See also: [age](#), tribulation)

### Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:1](#); [4:4](#); [4:8](#); [4:10](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#))

## Titus

### Facts:

Titus was a Gentile. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

- A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
- In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
- In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [believe](#), [church](#), [circumcise](#), [Crete](#), [elder](#), [encourage](#), [instruct](#), [minister](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:10
- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:3-5
- Titus 1:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G51030

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:1](#); [2:3](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), sacrifice)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:17](#))

## tradition

### Definition:

The term “tradition” refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word “traditions” referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God’s laws. The expression “tradition of men” or “human tradition” makes this clear.
- Phrases such as “traditions of the elders” or “traditions of my fathers” referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term “tradition” in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), Christian, [ancestor](#), generation, [Jew](#), [law](#), Moses)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Colossians 2:8
- Galatians 1:13-14
- Mark 7:2
- Matthew 15:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G38620

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:14](#))

## transgress, transgression

### Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [trespass](#), iniquity)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:18](#); [3:19](#))

## trespass

### Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, [sin](#), [transgress](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 2:13
- Ephesians 2:1
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 5:17
- Romans 5:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0816, H0817, H0819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G02640, G39000

(Go back to: [Galatians 6:1](#))



## trial, proving

### Definition:

The term "trial" refers to a situation in which something or someone is "tried" or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term "trial" can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is "a testing" or "a temptation" is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](#), test, innocent, guilt)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 3:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G01780, G13830, G29190, G39860

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:14](#))

## trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:7](#); [5:10](#); [6:17](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" means that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), obey, prophet, [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true!** You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth?**"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:5](#); [2:14](#); [4:16](#); [5:7](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), [confidence](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [Galatians 2:7](#))

## turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:9](#))

## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:7](#))



## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty;” “useless;” “hopeless;” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: [false god](#), worthy)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G09450, G15000, G27560, G27580, G27610, G31510, G31520, G31530, G31550

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:4; 4:11](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:20](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:16](#); [5:25](#); [6:16](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:4](#))

## womb

### Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:15](#))

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God.**"
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word.**
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God.**
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [Galatians 3:8](#); [3:22](#); [4:30](#); [6:6](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

**(Go back to:** [Introduction to Galatians](#)\n\n## [Part 1: General Introduction](#)\n\n### [Outline of the Book of Galatians](#)\n\n1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).\n1. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).\n1. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).\n1. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them.



They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).<sup>1</sup> Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).

### Who wrote the Book of Galatians?  
Paul wrote the book of Galatians. He had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee. He persecuted Christians. After he began to trust in Jesus Christ, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus and establishing churches.

It is uncertain when Paul wrote this letter and where he was when he wrote it. Some Bible scholars think Paul was in the city of Ephesus and wrote this letter after the second time he traveled to tell people about Jesus and establish churches. Other scholars think Paul was in the city of Antioch in Syria and wrote the letter soon after the first time he traveled.

### What is the Book of Galatians about?  
Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teachers who said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that a person is saved by believing in Jesus Christ. In the book of Galatians Paul explains that people are saved as result of believing in Jesus and not as a result of obeying the law of Moses and he proves this by using various Old Testament passages to illustrate this truth. (See: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#), [faith](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [law of God](#) and [work](#), [works](#), [deeds](#))

### How should the title of this book be translated?  
Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?  
To "live like Jews" means to obey the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people who taught that it was necessary to follow the law of Moses in addition to believing in Jesus were called "Judaizers."

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### How did Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?  
These terms are used in a unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to obey a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to obey a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life because they are thankful that God has been so kind to them. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

### What did Paul mean by the expressions "in Christ," and "in Christ Jesus?"  
Paul uses the spatial metaphor "in Christ" or the related phrase "in Christ Jesus" very frequently in this letter. This expression occurs with a metaphorical meaning in 1:22; 2:4,17; 3:14, 26, 28; and 5:6. Paul meant to express the idea of a very close union between Christ and the people who believe in him. This metaphor emphasizes that believers are as closely united to Christ as if they were inside him. Paul believes that this is true for all believers, and sometimes he uses "in Christ" simply to identify that what he is speaking about is true for those who believe in Jesus such as in 2:4. Other times, he emphasizes union with Christ as the means or the basis for some statement or exhortation. Sometimes when Paul uses the phrase "in Christ" he intends a different meaning. See, for example, 2:16 where Paul says "we also believed in Christ Jesus, so that we might be justified by faith in Christ" and see 2:17 where Paul spoke of Christ being the object of faith when he said "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ." See the notes on specific verses for help in understanding the contextual meaning of "in Christ" and related phrases. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?  
\* "Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes" (3:1)? The ULT, UST, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, older versions of the Bible add, "[so] that ye should not obey the truth." Translators are advised not to include this expression. However, if in the translators' region there are older Bible versions that have the passage, the translators can include it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to Galatians. (See: [Textual Variants](#)); [Galatians 2:16](#); [3:2](#); [3:5](#); [3:10](#); [5:19](#); [6:4](#))

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), Rome, godly)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:3](#); [6:14](#))

## wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

### Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [Galatians 4:12](#))

## year

### Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:18](#); [2:1](#); [3:17](#))

## yeast, leaven, unleavened

### Definition:

“Leaven” is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. “Yeast” is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as “yeast,” which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn’t have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term “leaven” or “yeast” is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person’s life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term “leaven” is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God’s kingdom spreads from person to person.

### Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as “leaven” or “substance that causes dough to rise” or “expanding agent.” The word “rise” could be expressed as “expand” or “get bigger” or “puff up.”
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means “leavening,” this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, Passover, unleavened bread)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:8
- Galatians 5:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G01060, G22190, G22200

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:9](#))

## yoke, yoked, tied

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, [burden](#), oppress, [persecute](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 5:1
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 9:4
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 4:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

(Go back to: [Galatians 5:1](#))

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [Galatians 1:14](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs



Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
Leonard Smith  
Suzanna Smith  
Tim Span  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Maria Tijerina  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Kailey Gregory  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
John Huffman  
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
Leonard Smith  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
James Vigen  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton



Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors**

Door43 World Missions Community

Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)

Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)

Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)

Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)